

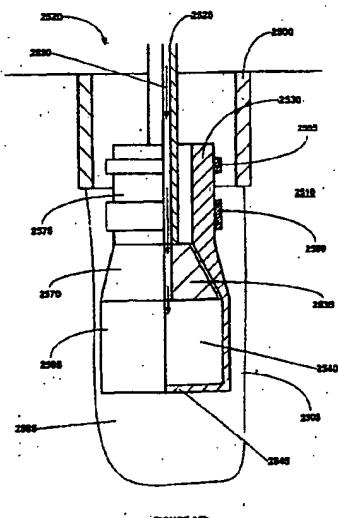
(12) UK Patent Application (19) GB (11) 2 396 643 (13) A

(43) Date of A Publication 30.06.2004

(21) Application No:	0404832.8	(51) INT CL <sup>7</sup> : E21B 43/10 23/01
(22) Date of Filing:	12.06.2001	(52) UK CL (Edition W ): E1F FAC FAC9 FKF FKG FLA F204
Date Lodged:	03.03.2004	(56) Documents Cited: GB 2356651 A WO 2001/004535 A
(30) Priority Data:		
(31) 60212359	(32) 19.06.2000	(33) US
(62) Divided from Application No 0229708.3 under Section 15(4) of the Patents Act 1977		
(71) Applicant(s): Shell Oil Company (Incorporated in USA - Texas) 910 Louisiana Street, Houston, Texas 77252-2463, United States of America		(58) Field of Search: UK CL (Edition W ) E1F INT CL <sup>7</sup> E21B Other: Online: WPI, EPODOC
(72) Inventor(s): Robert Lance Cook Richard Carl Haut Lev Ring		

(54) **Abstract Title: Coupling an expendable tubular member to a preexisting structure**

(57) An expendable tubular member 2530 is anchored to a wellbore casing 2500 by injecting a fluid 2580 into a chamber 2540, the fluid having a density greater than that of a fluid within region 2585 outside of the expendable tubular member 2530. The difference in hydrostatic pressure between the chamber 2540 and the region 2585, due to the differences in fluid densities in these regions, causes the expendable tubular member 2530 to be radially expanded by, and extruded off expansion cone 2535. In another embodiment a tubular member is expanded by driving the tubular member onto an expansion cone in a first direction and axially displacing the expansion cone in a second direction relative to the tubular member, wherein the first and second directions are different.



GB 2396643 A

**GB 2386843 A continuation**

**(72) cont**

**Thomas Patrick Grant III**

**Edwin Arnold Zwadl Jr**

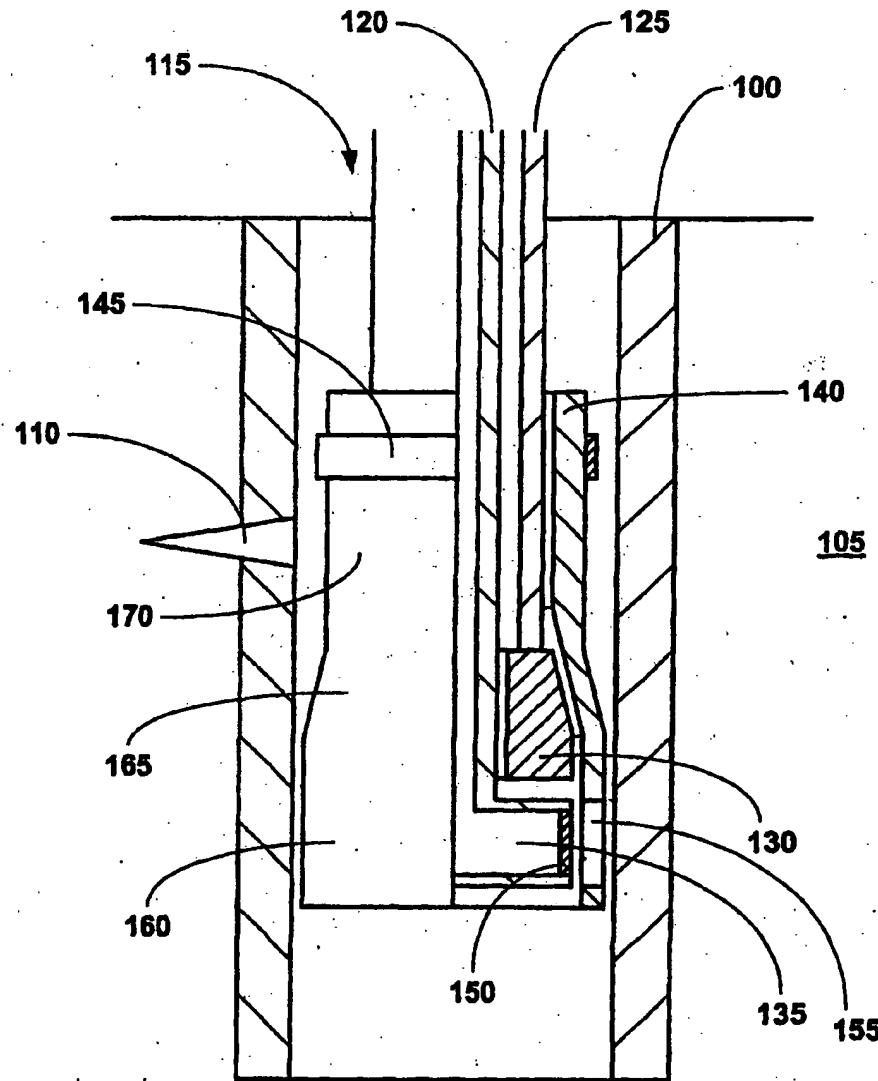
**Andrei Gregory Filippov**

**(74) Agent and/or Address for Service:**

**Heseltine Lake & Co**

**Imperial House, 15-19 Kingsway,**

**LONDON, WC2B 6UD, United Kingdom**



**FIGURE 1a**

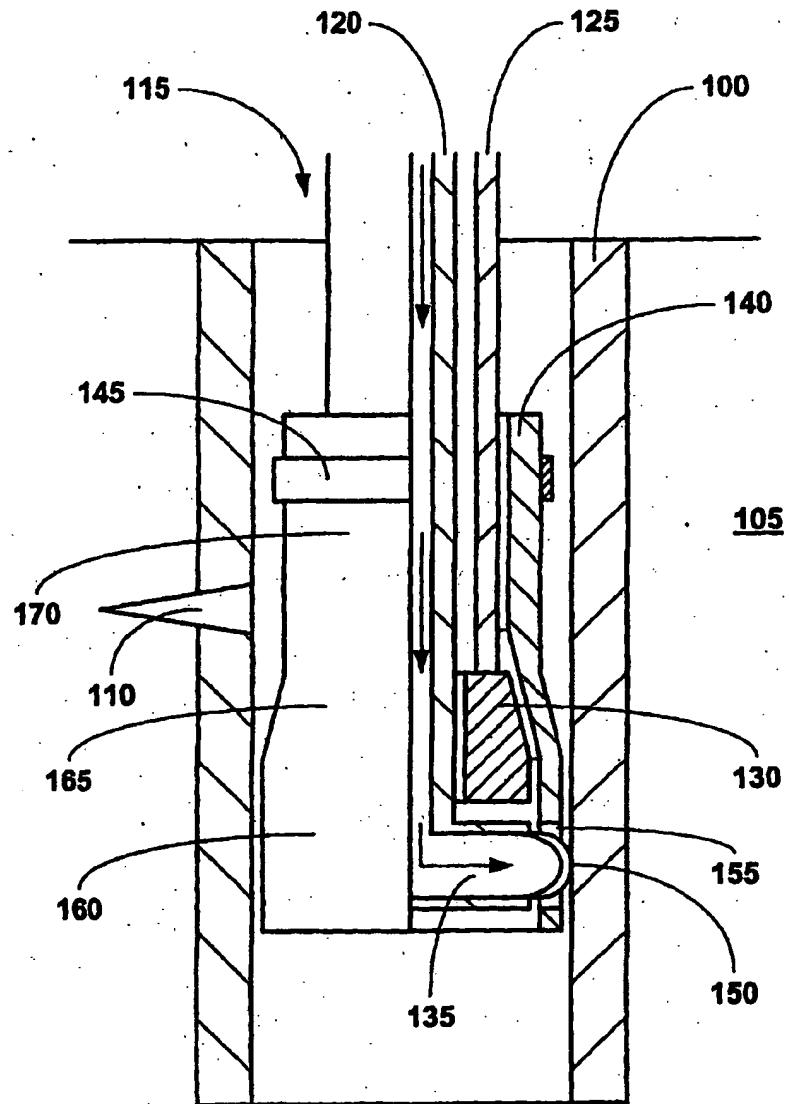
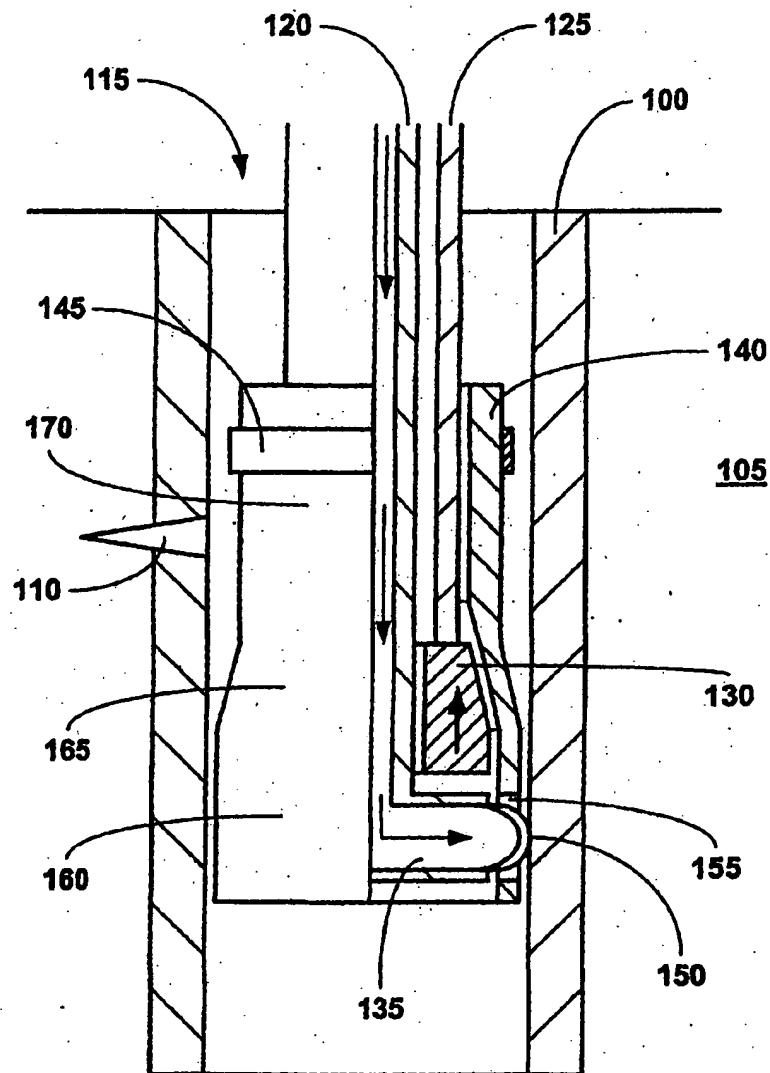


FIGURE 1b



### FIGURE 1c

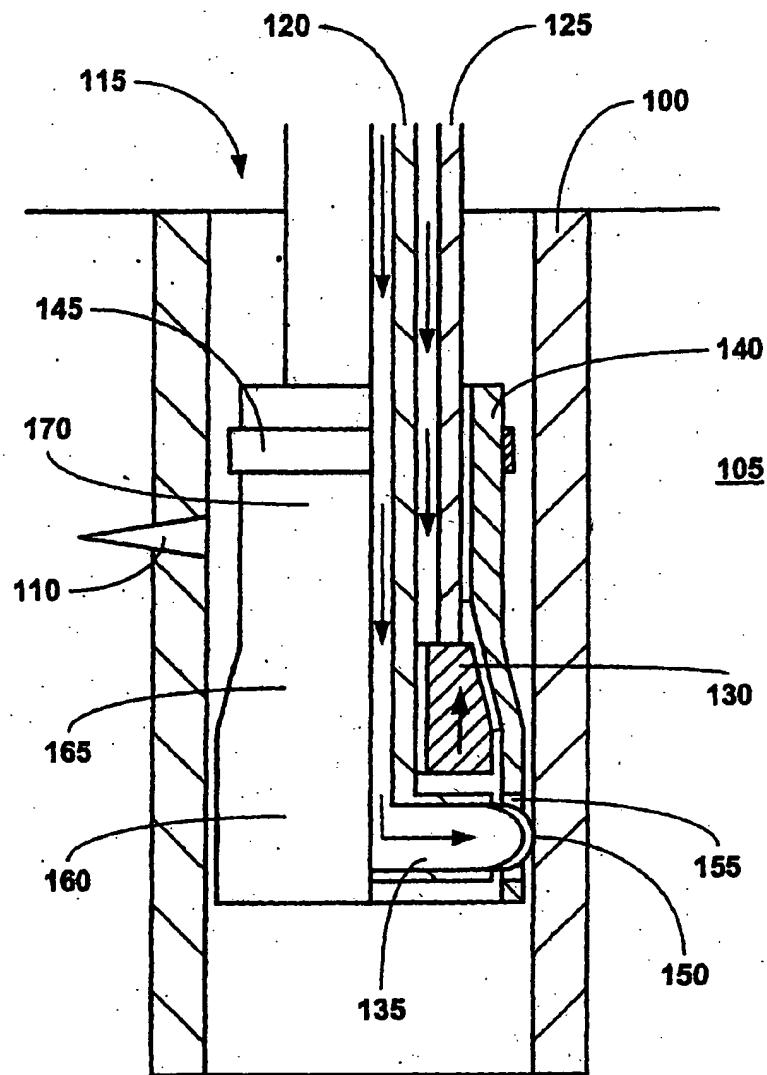


FIGURE 1d

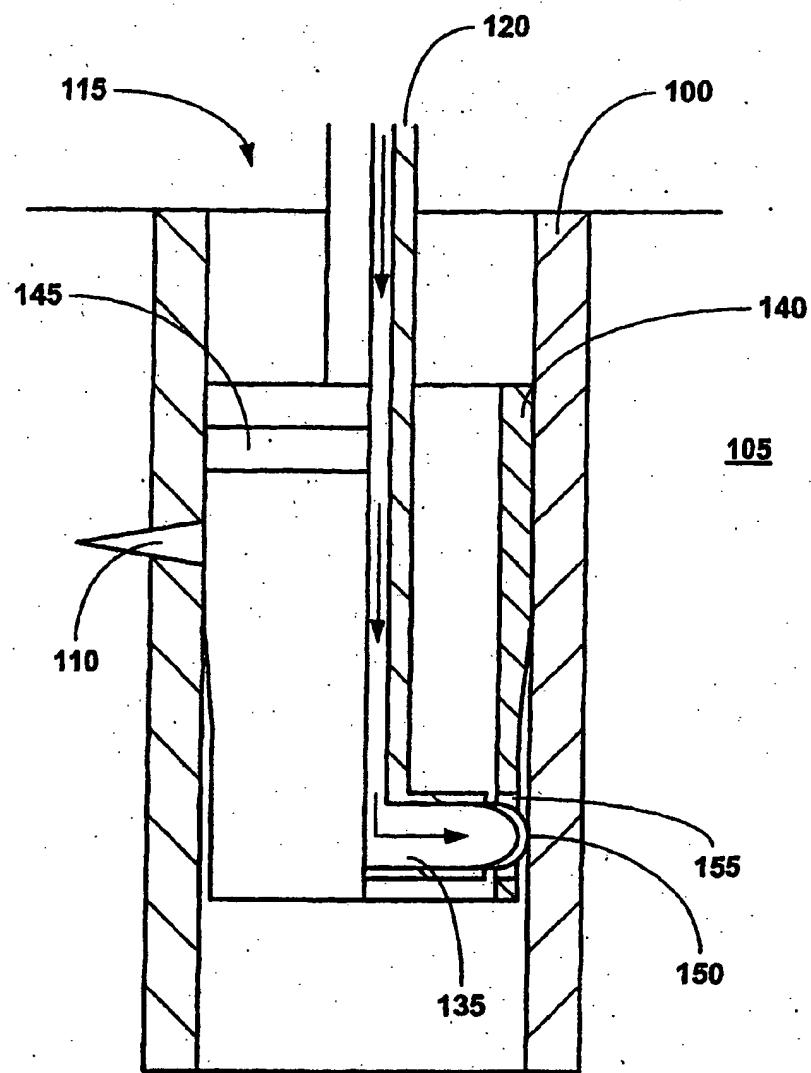
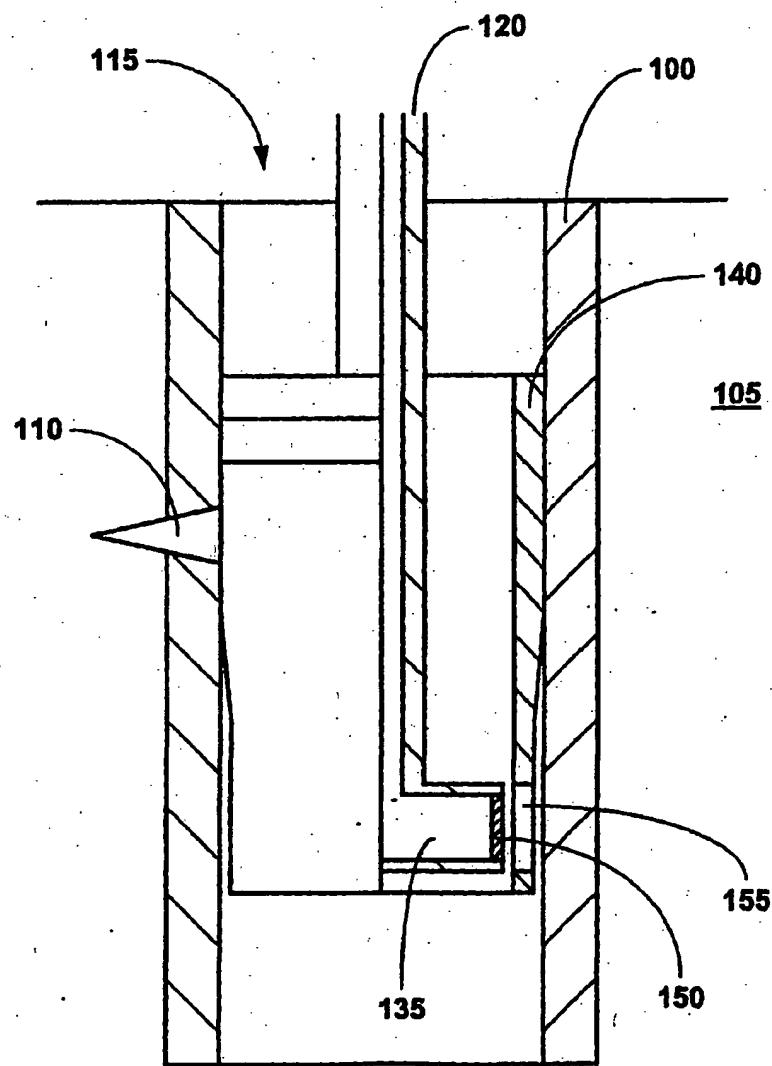
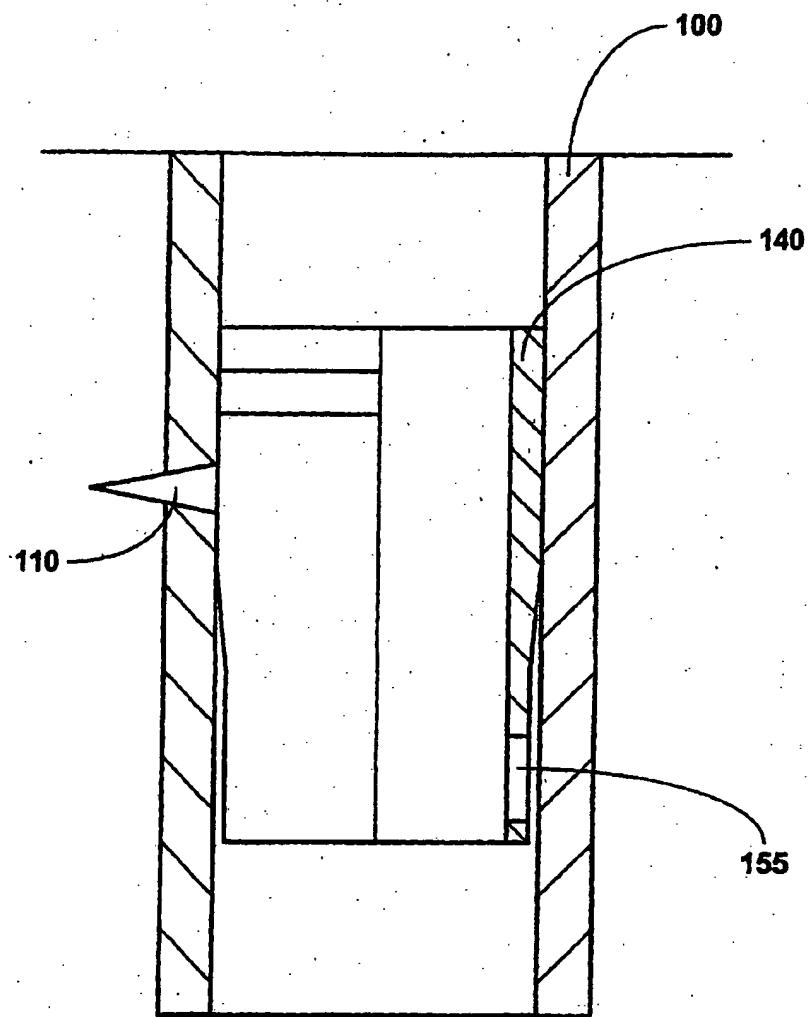


FIGURE 1e



**FIGURE 1f**



**FIGURE 1g**

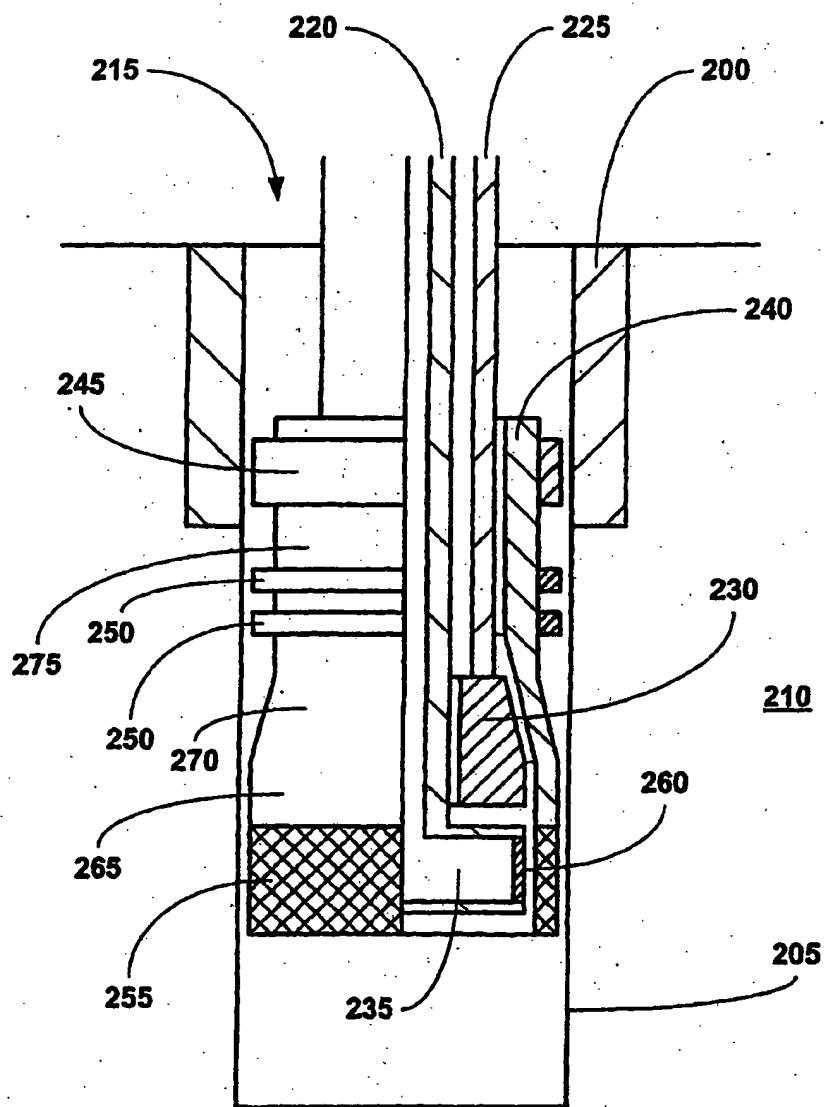


FIGURE 2a

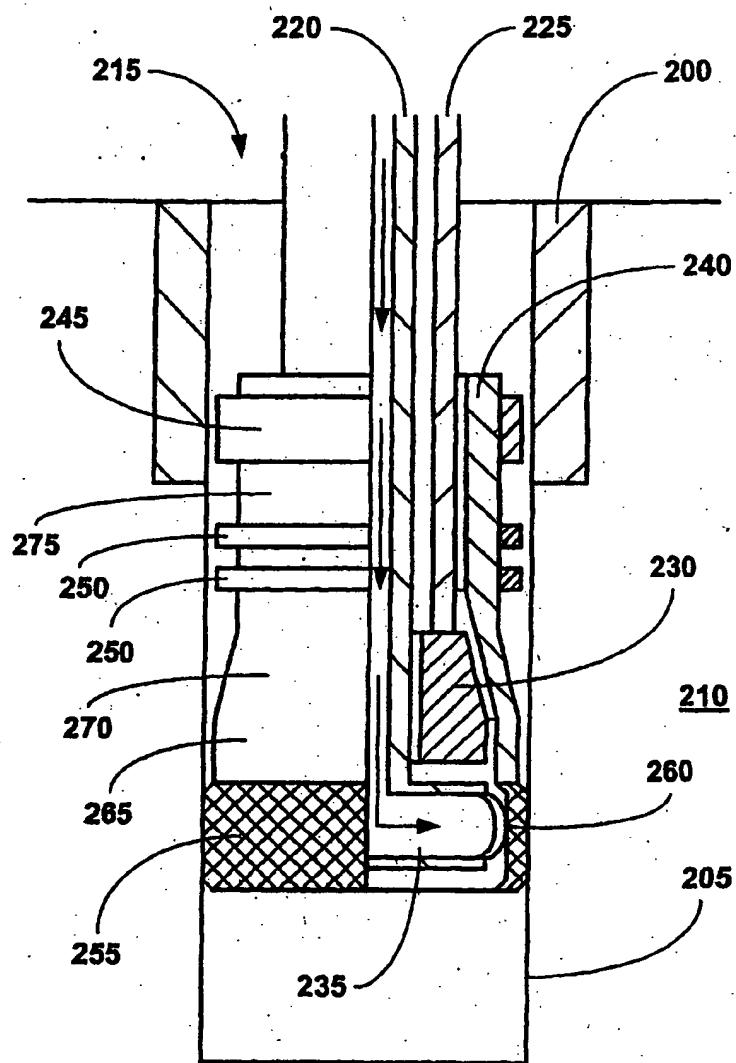
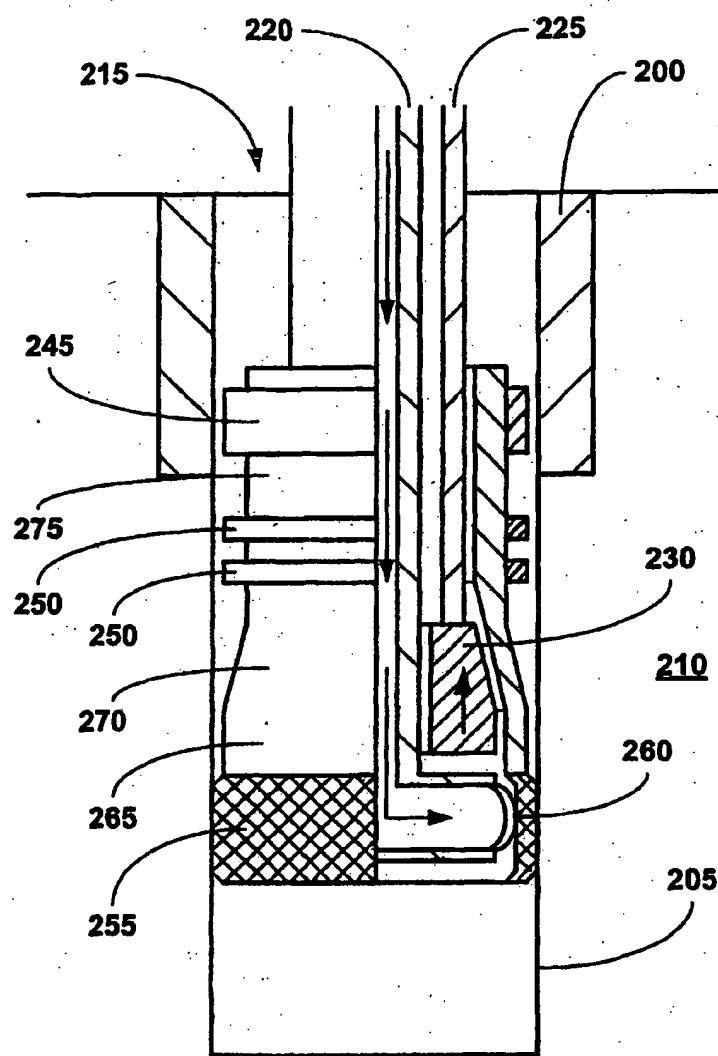


FIGURE 2b



**FIGURE 2c**

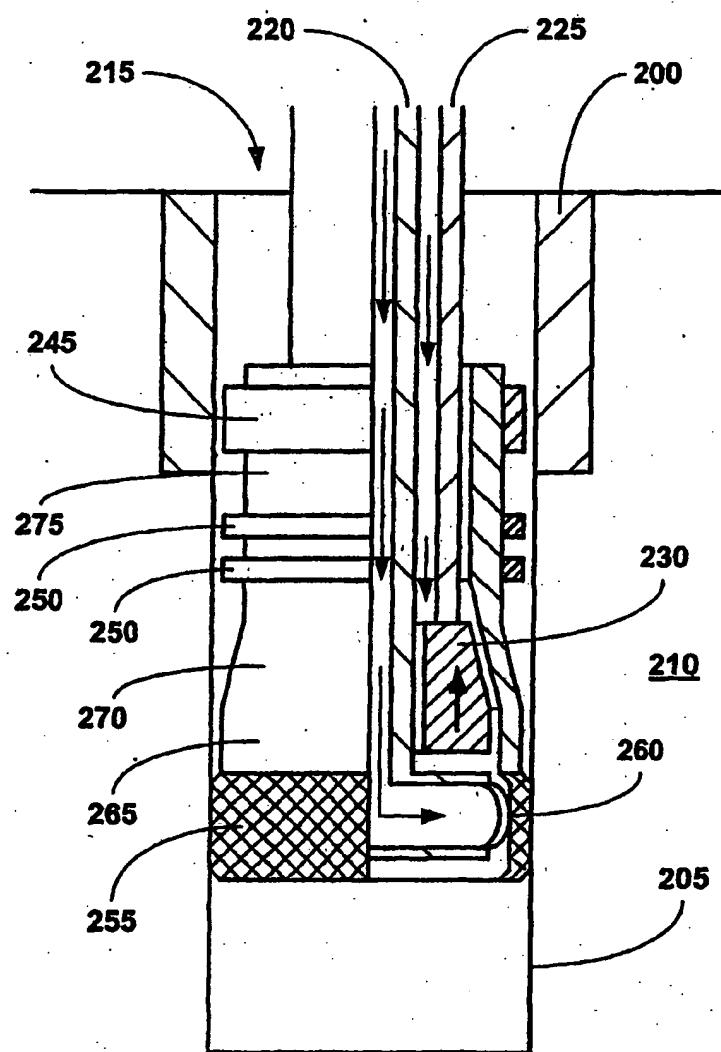


FIGURE 2d

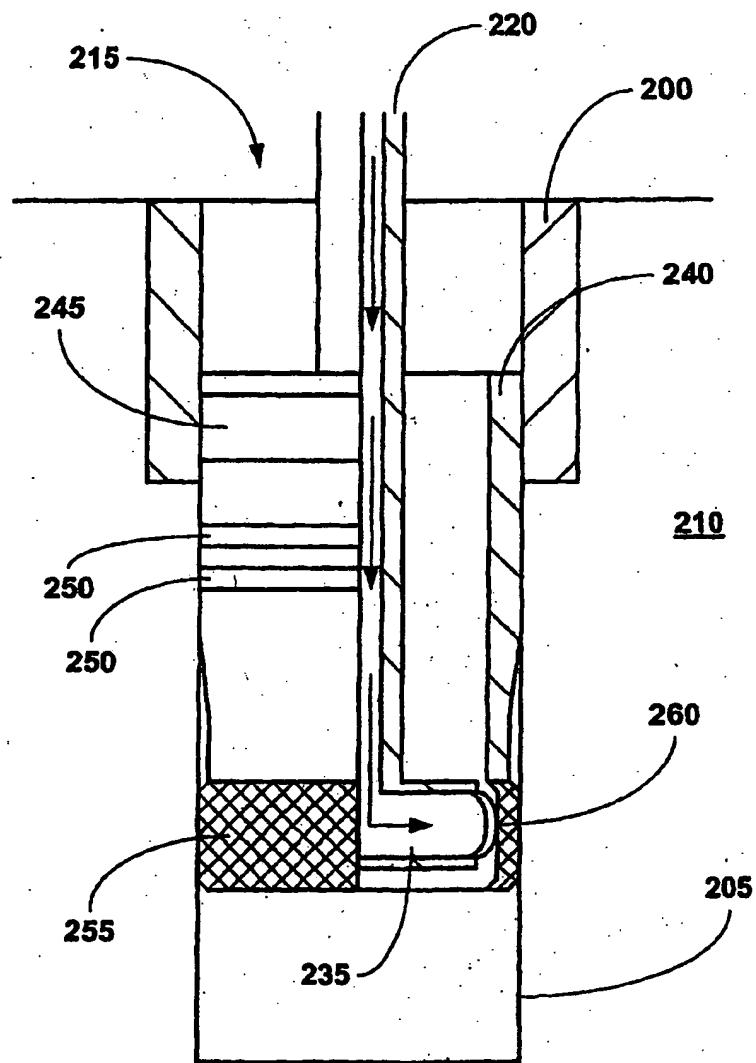
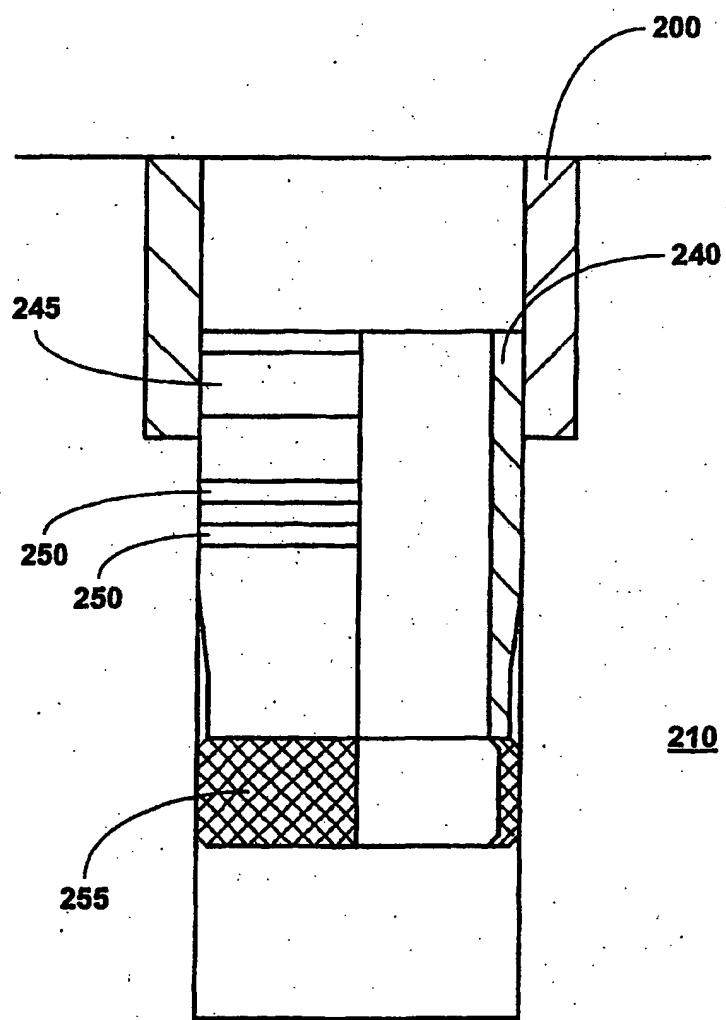


FIGURE 2e



**FIGURE 2f**

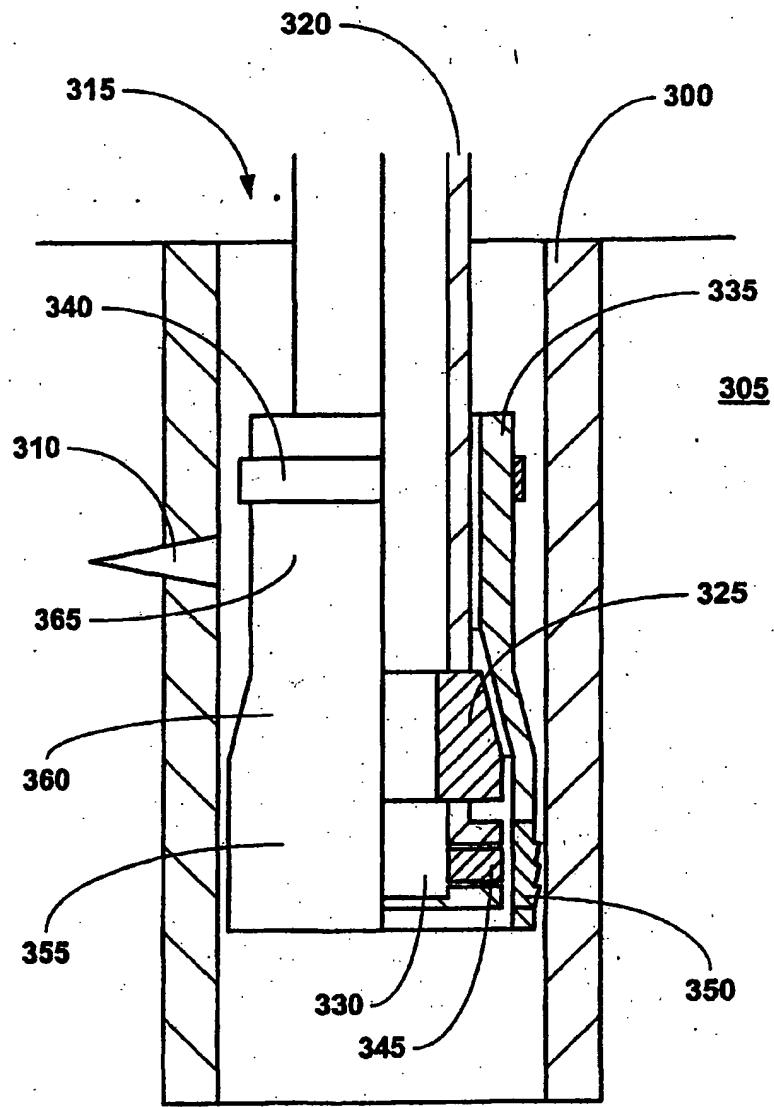
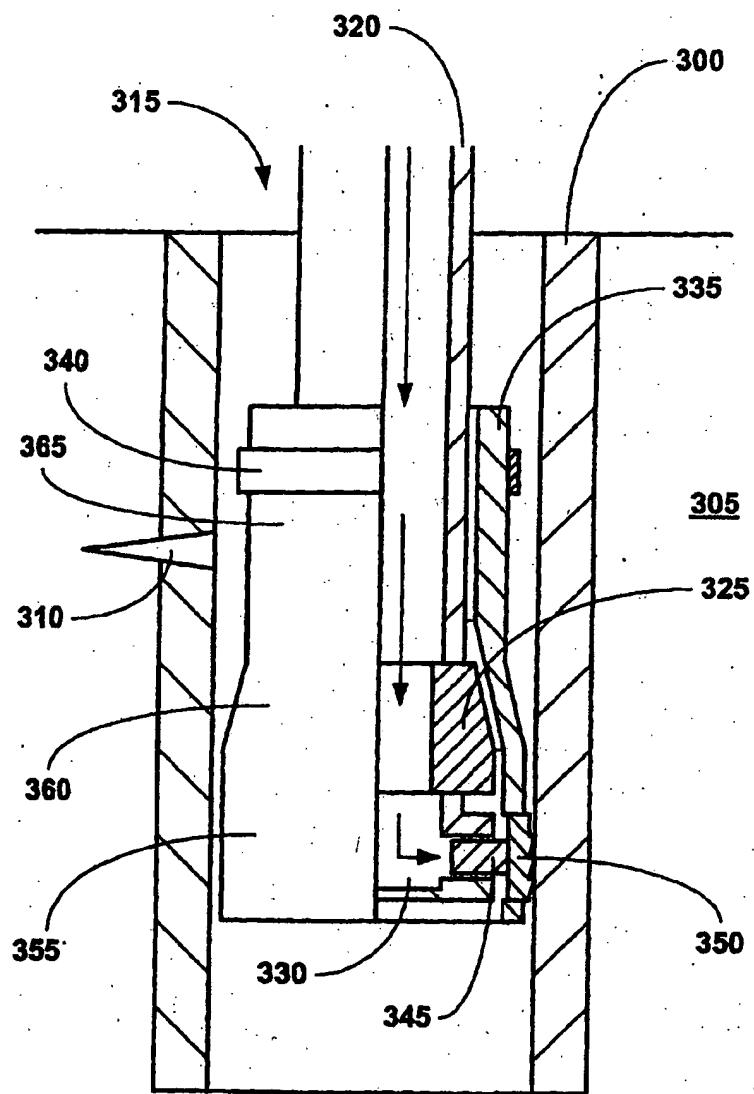


FIGURE 3a



**FIGURE 3b**

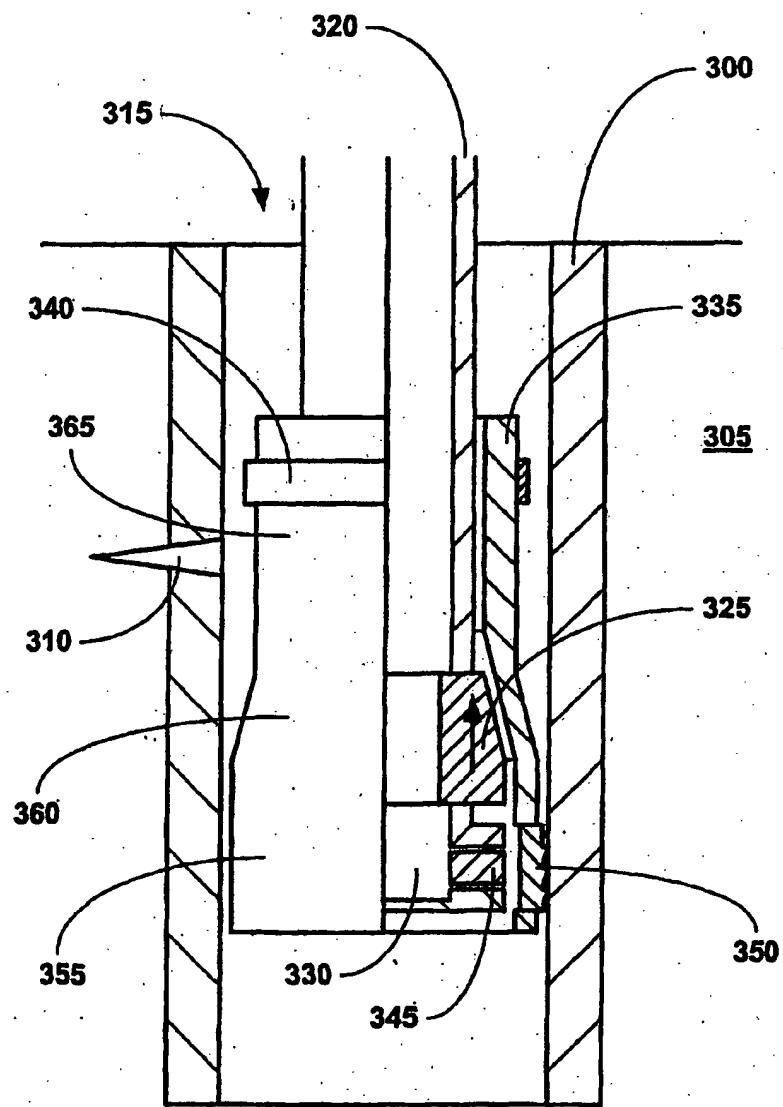


FIGURE 3c

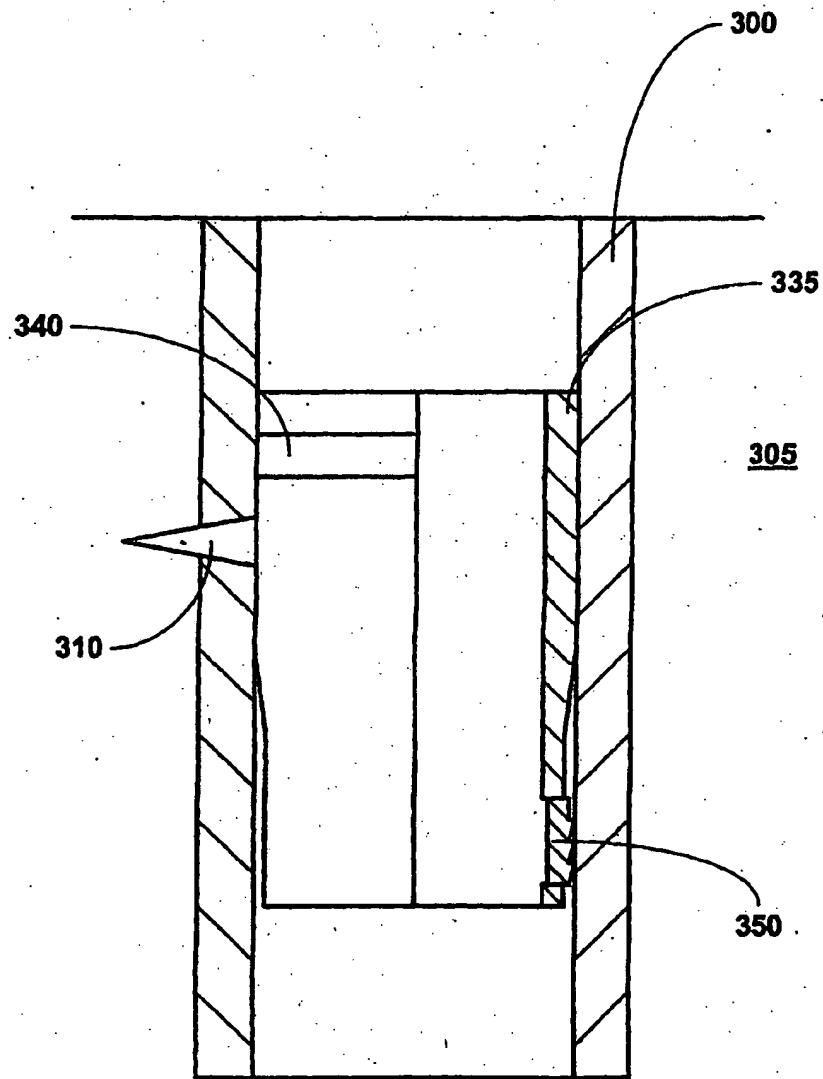


FIGURE 3d

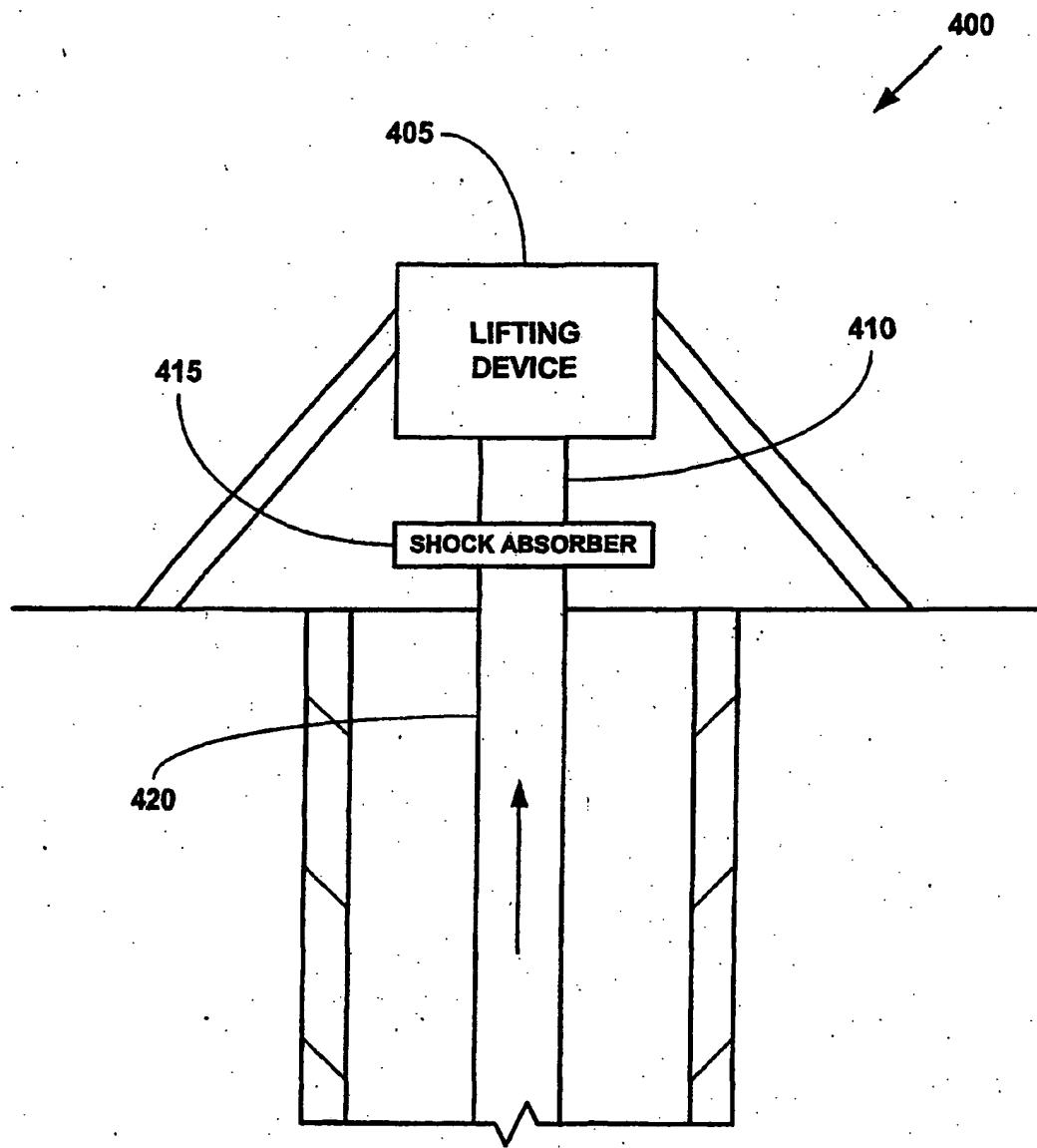
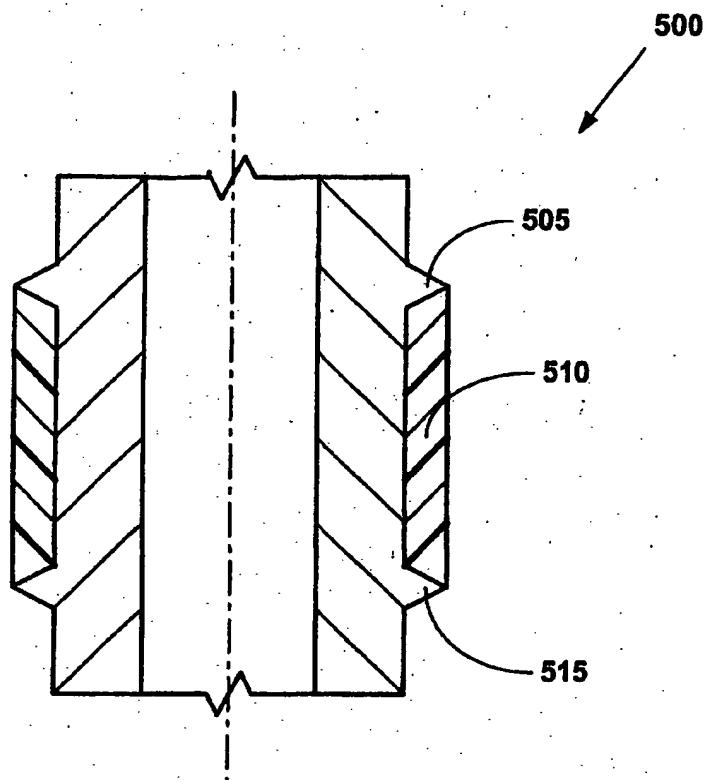
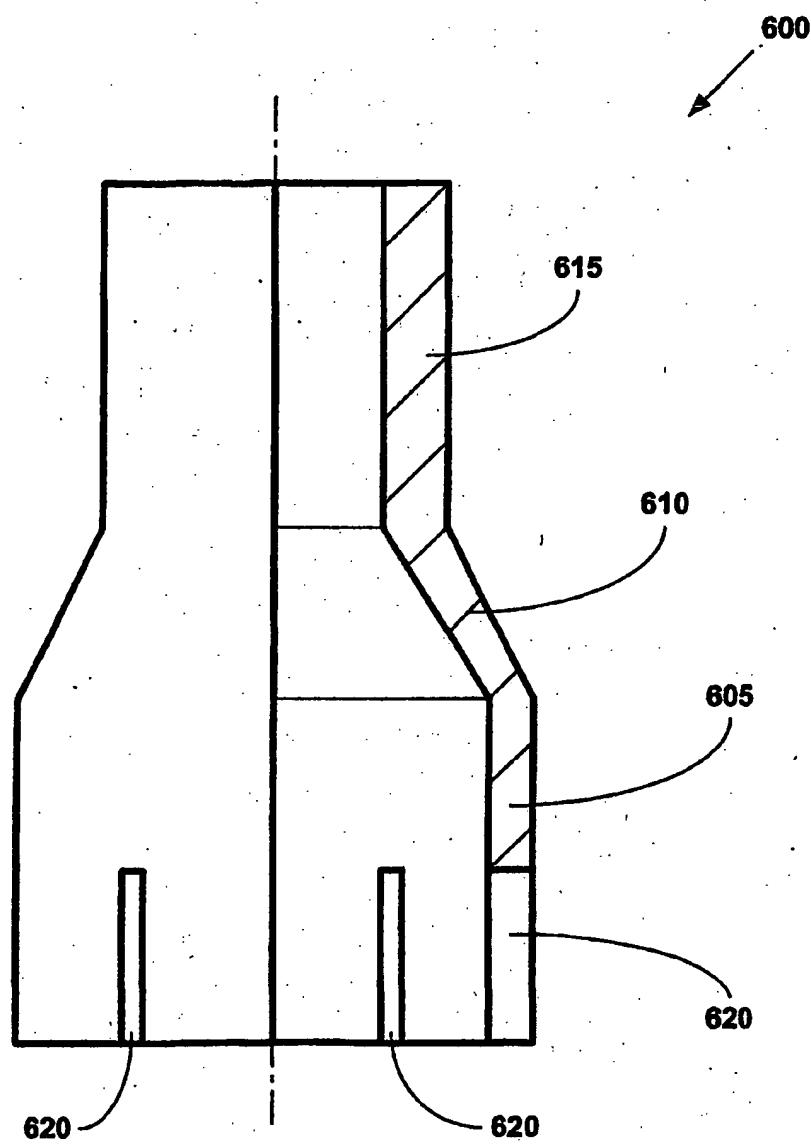


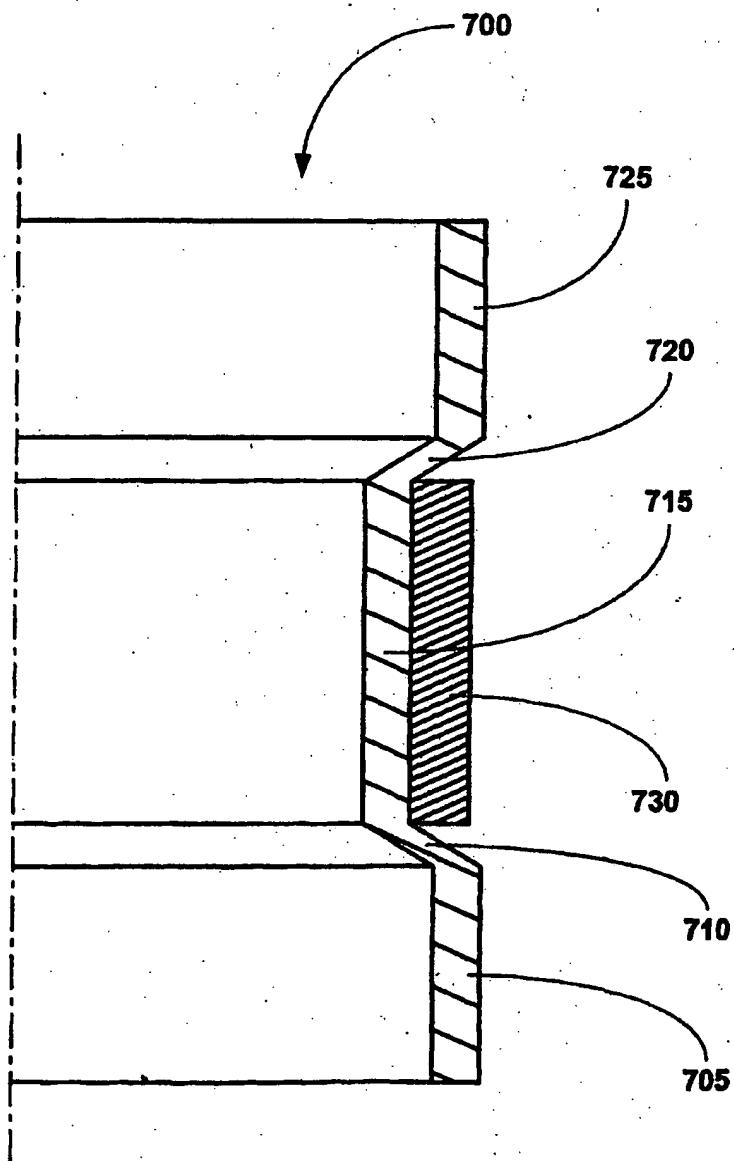
FIGURE 4



**FIGURE 5**



**FIGURE 6**



**FIGURE 7**

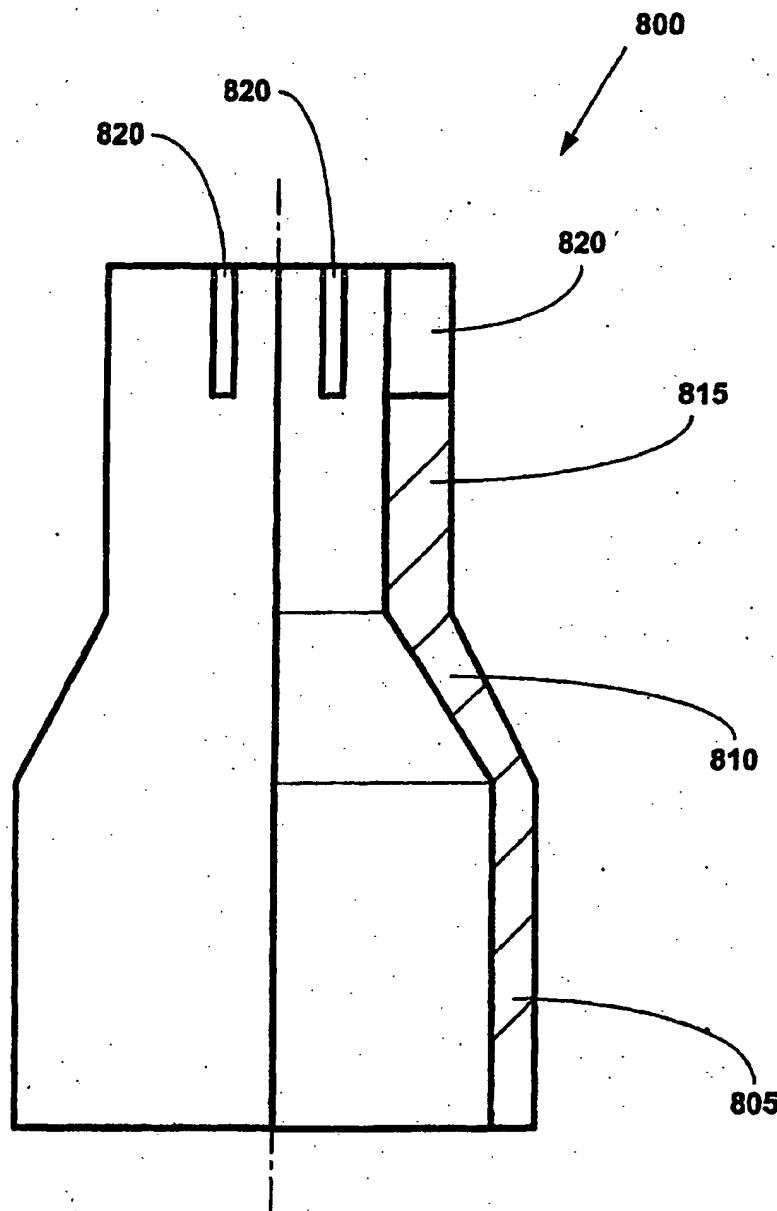


FIGURE 8

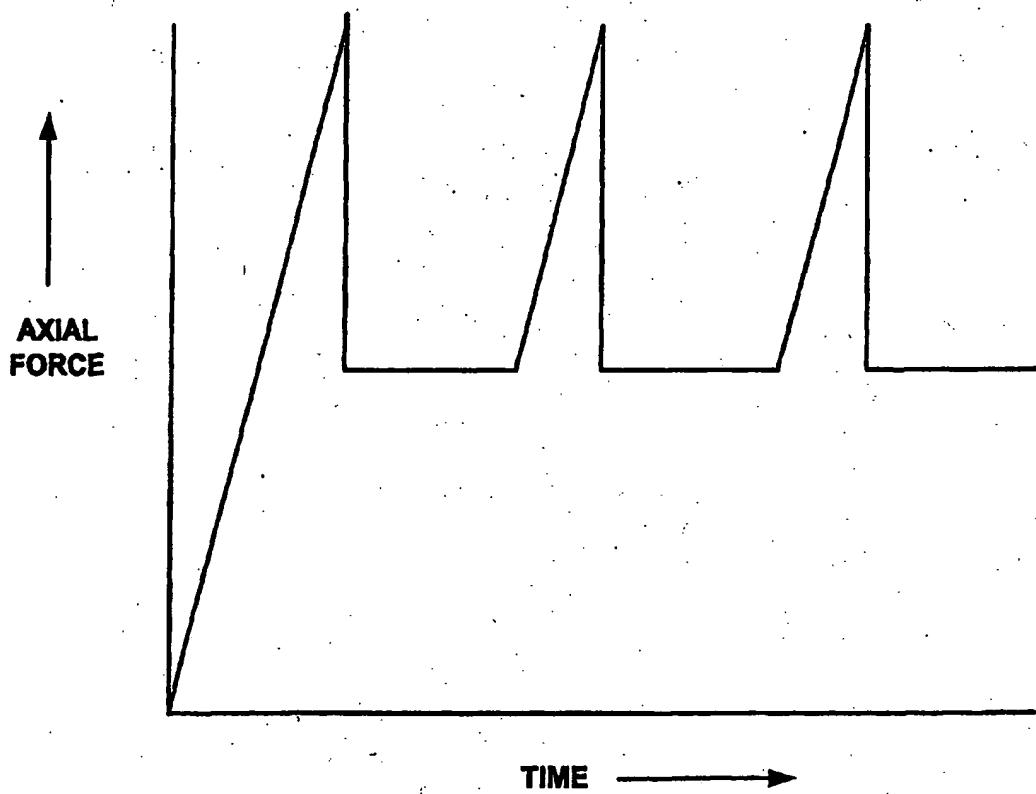


FIGURE 9

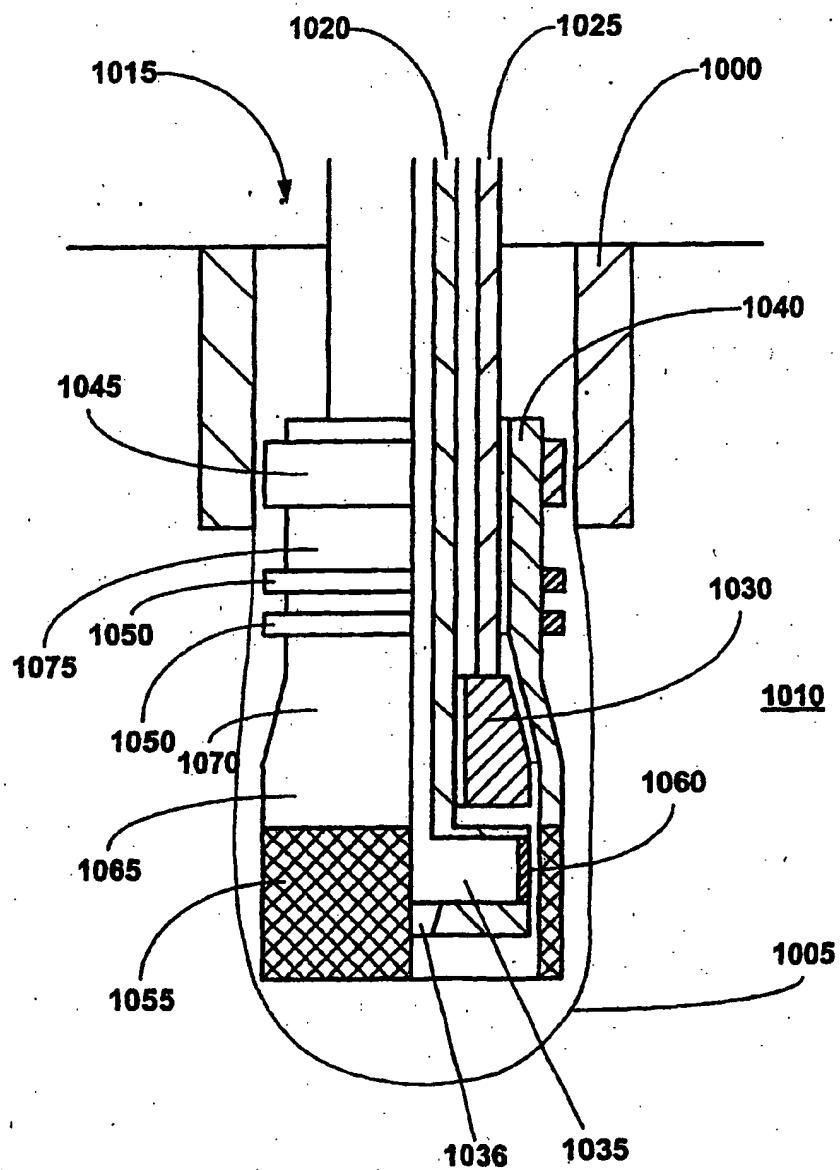
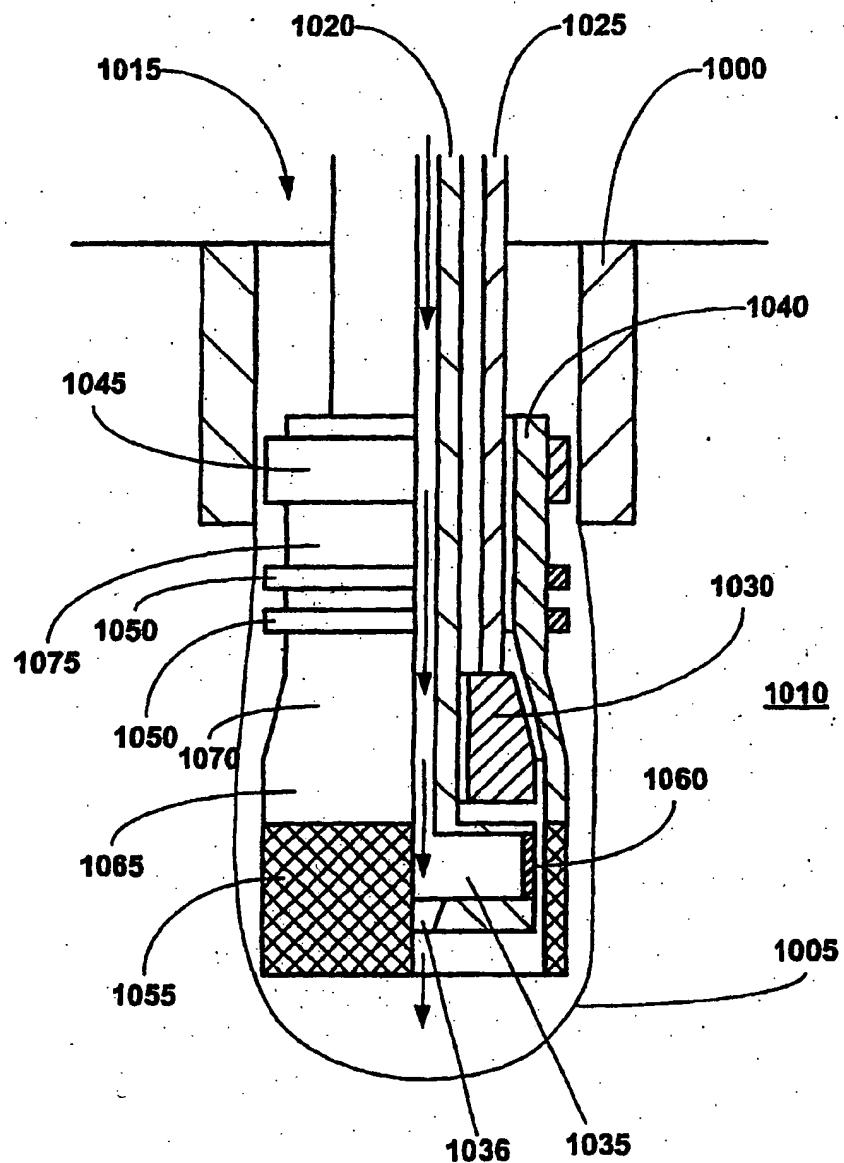
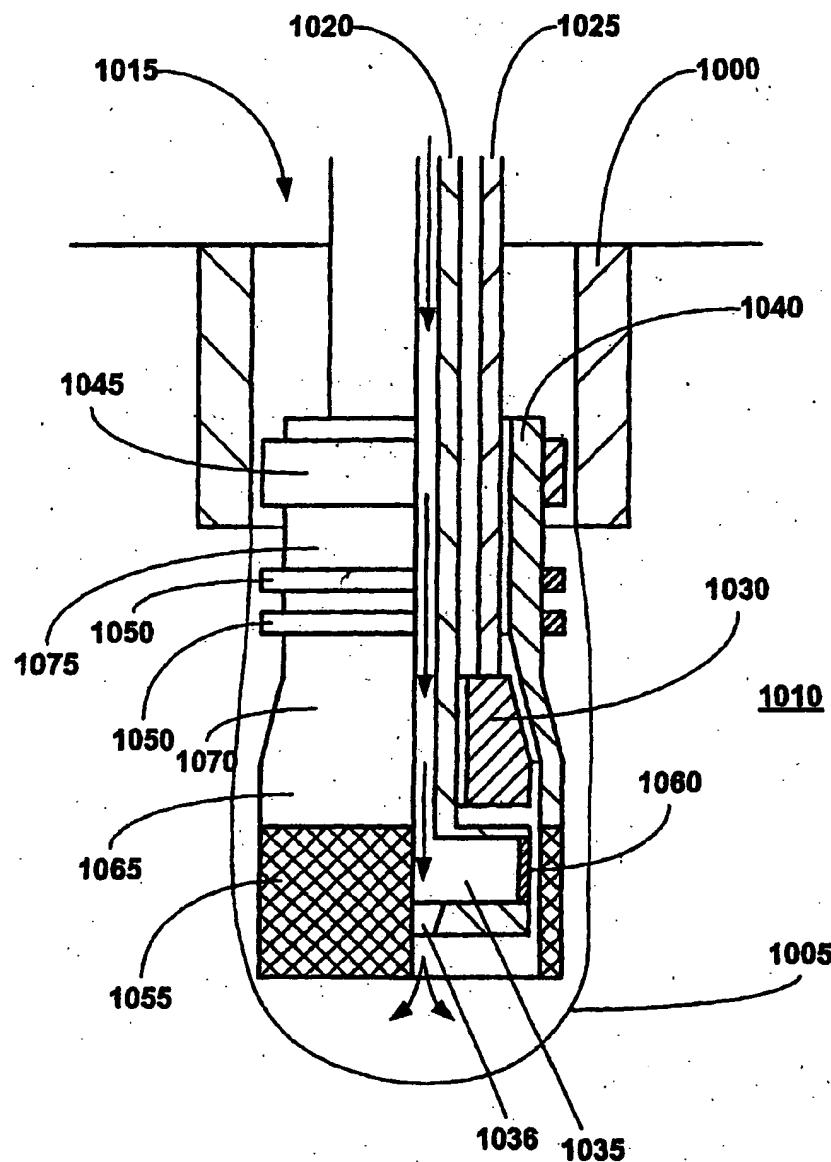


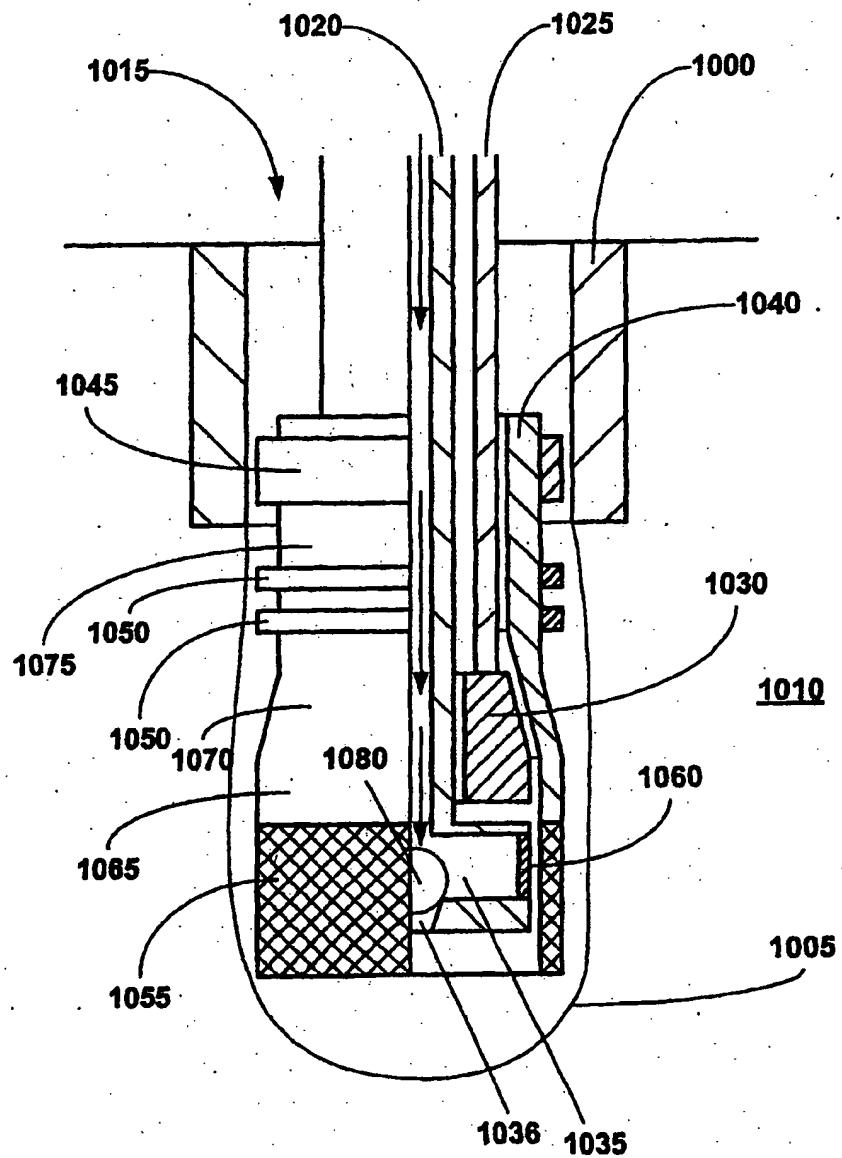
FIGURE 10a



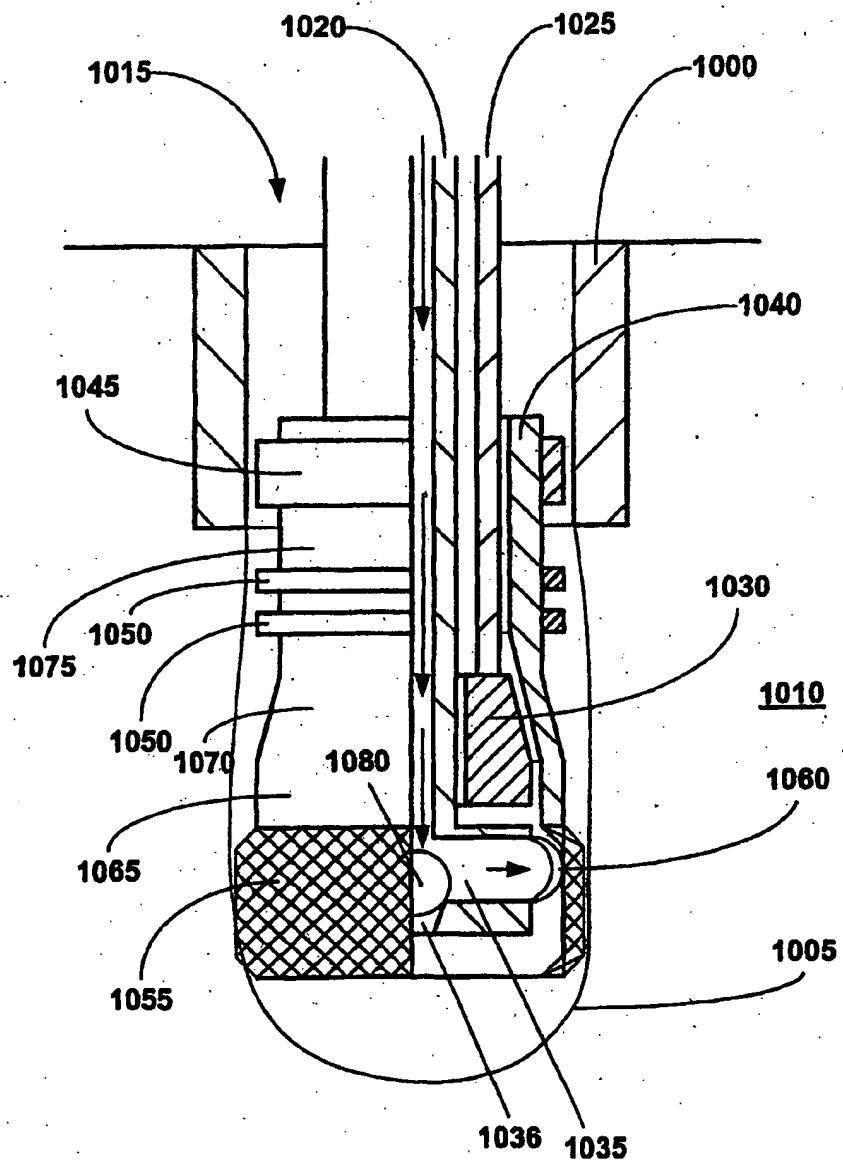
**FIGURE 10b**



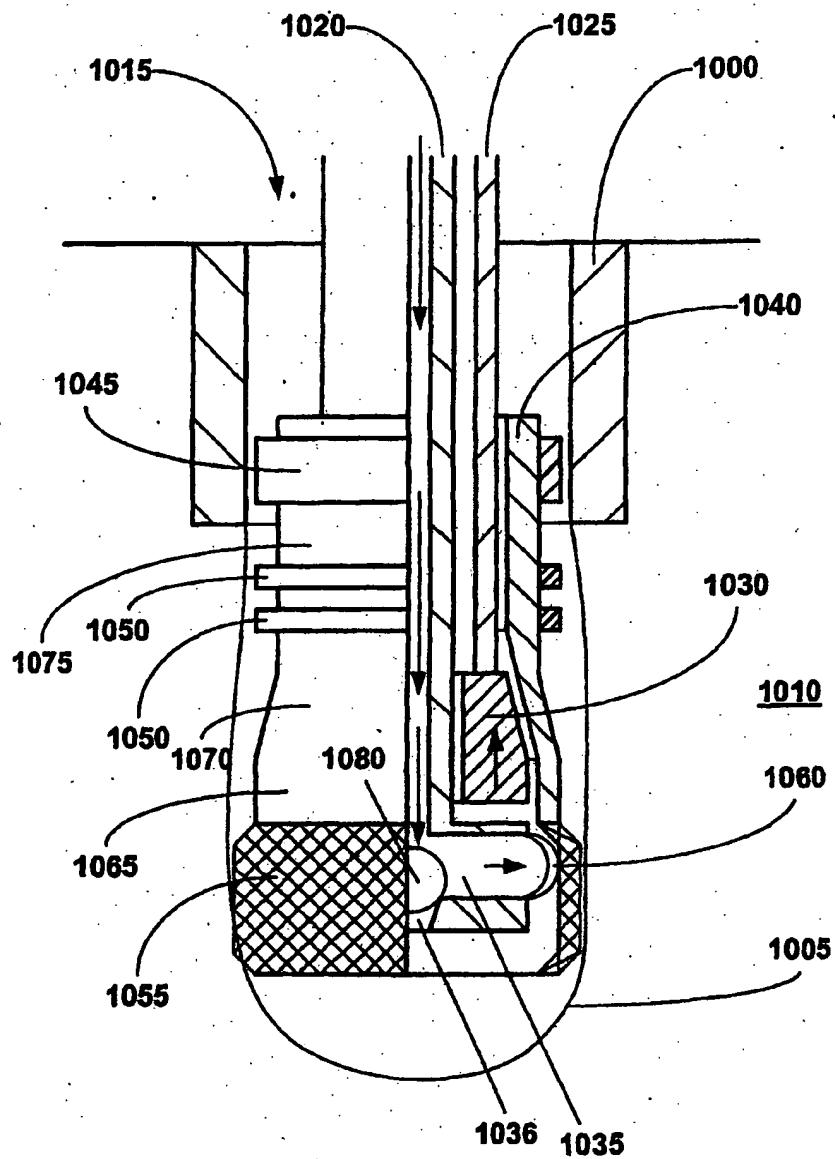
**FIGURE 10c**



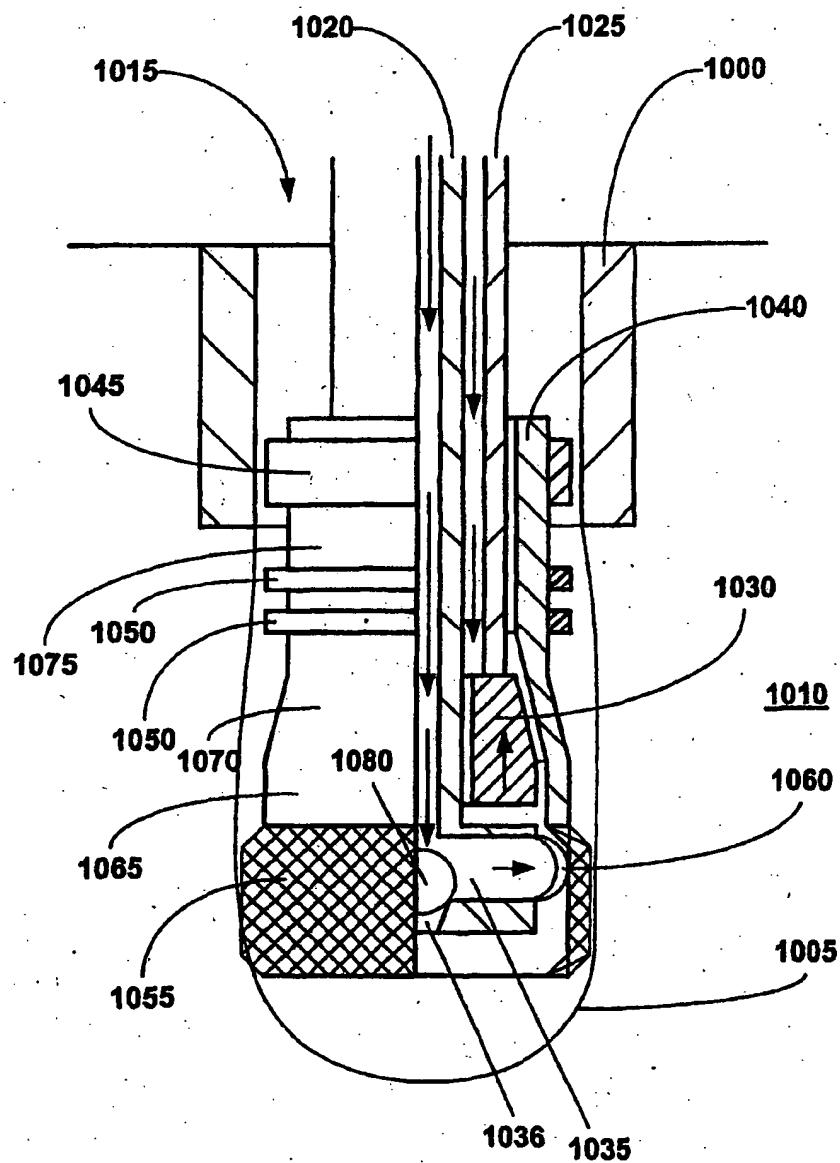
**FIGURE 10d**



**FIGURE 10e**



**FIGURE 10f**



**FIGURE 10g**

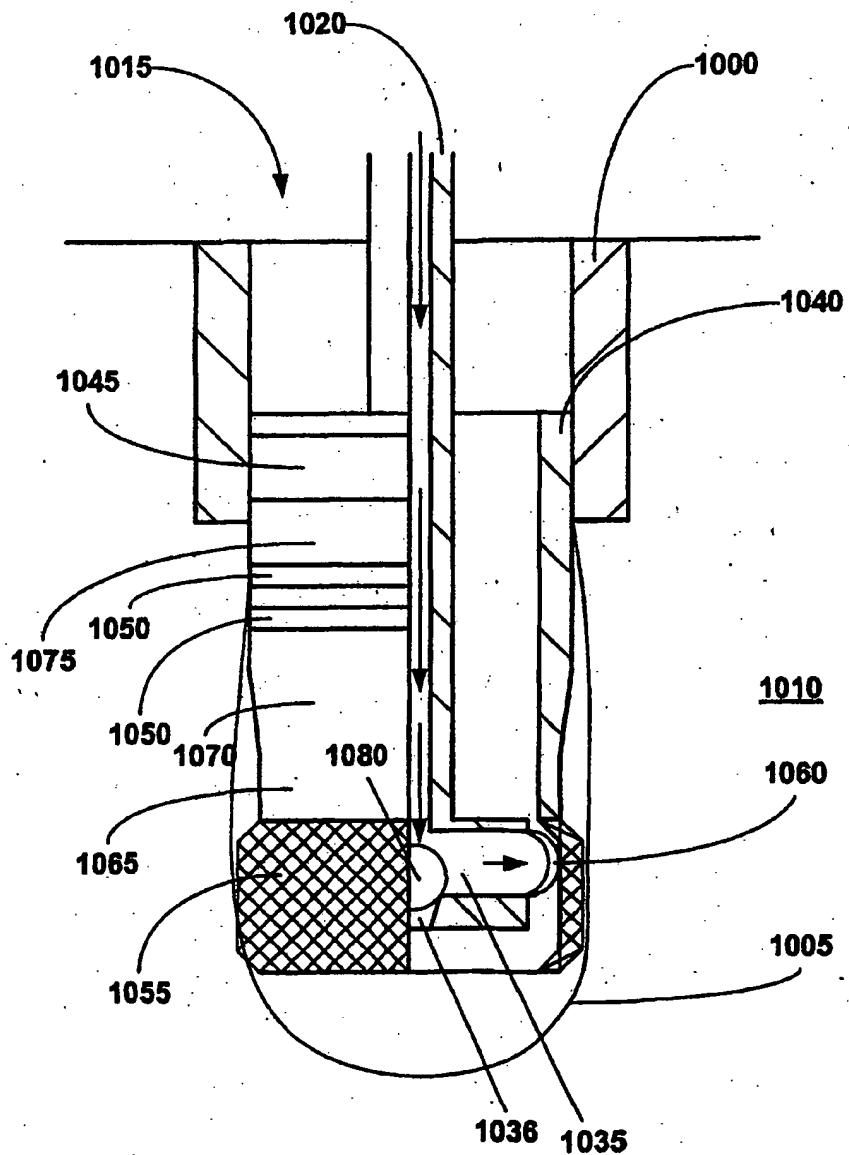


FIGURE 10h

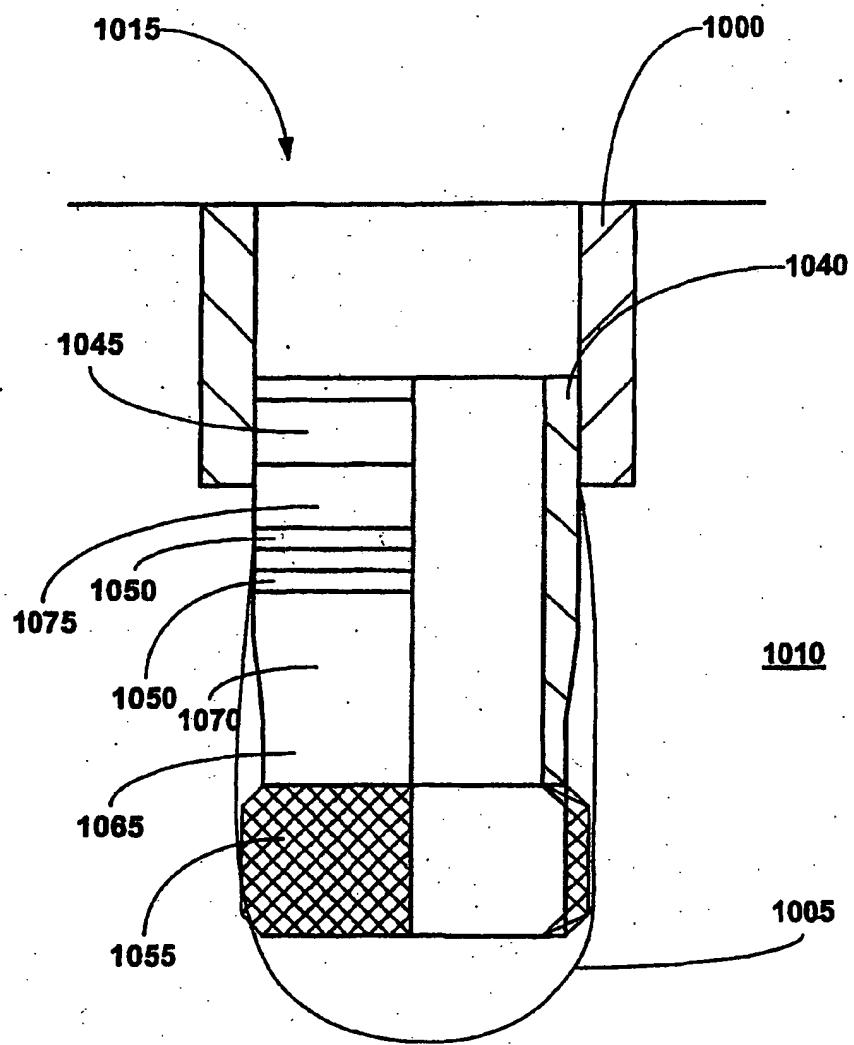


FIGURE 10I

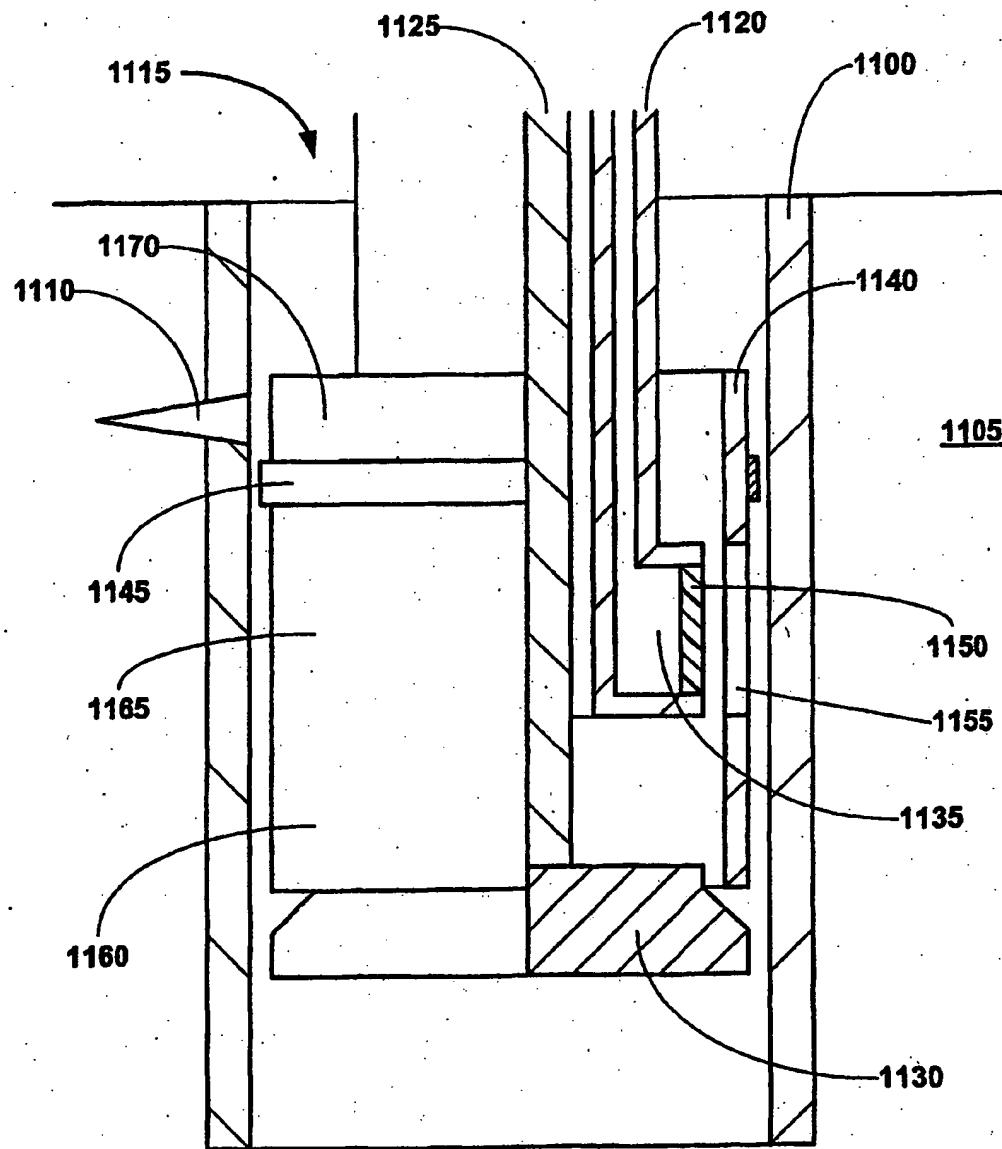
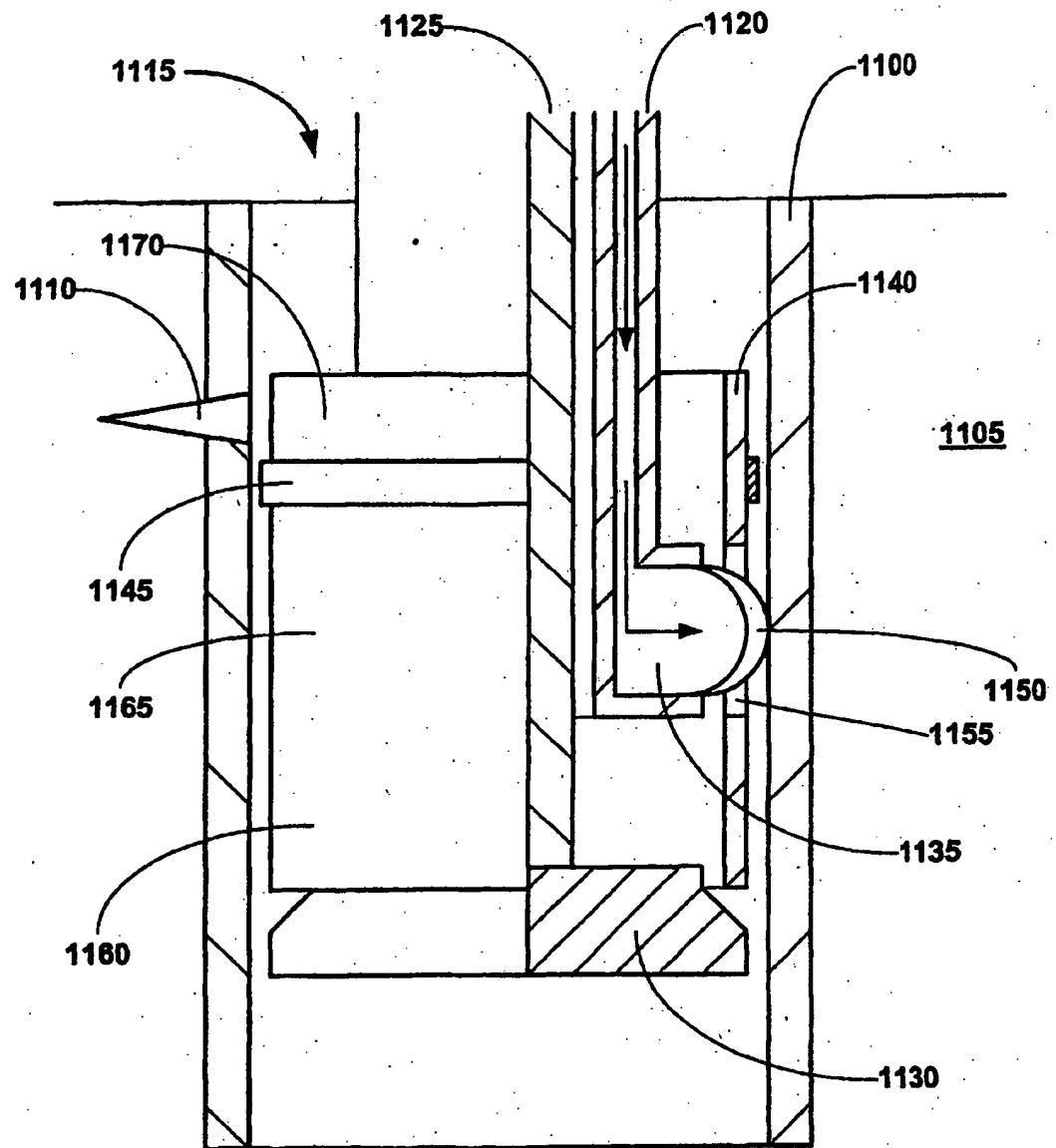


FIGURE 11a



**FIGURE 11b**

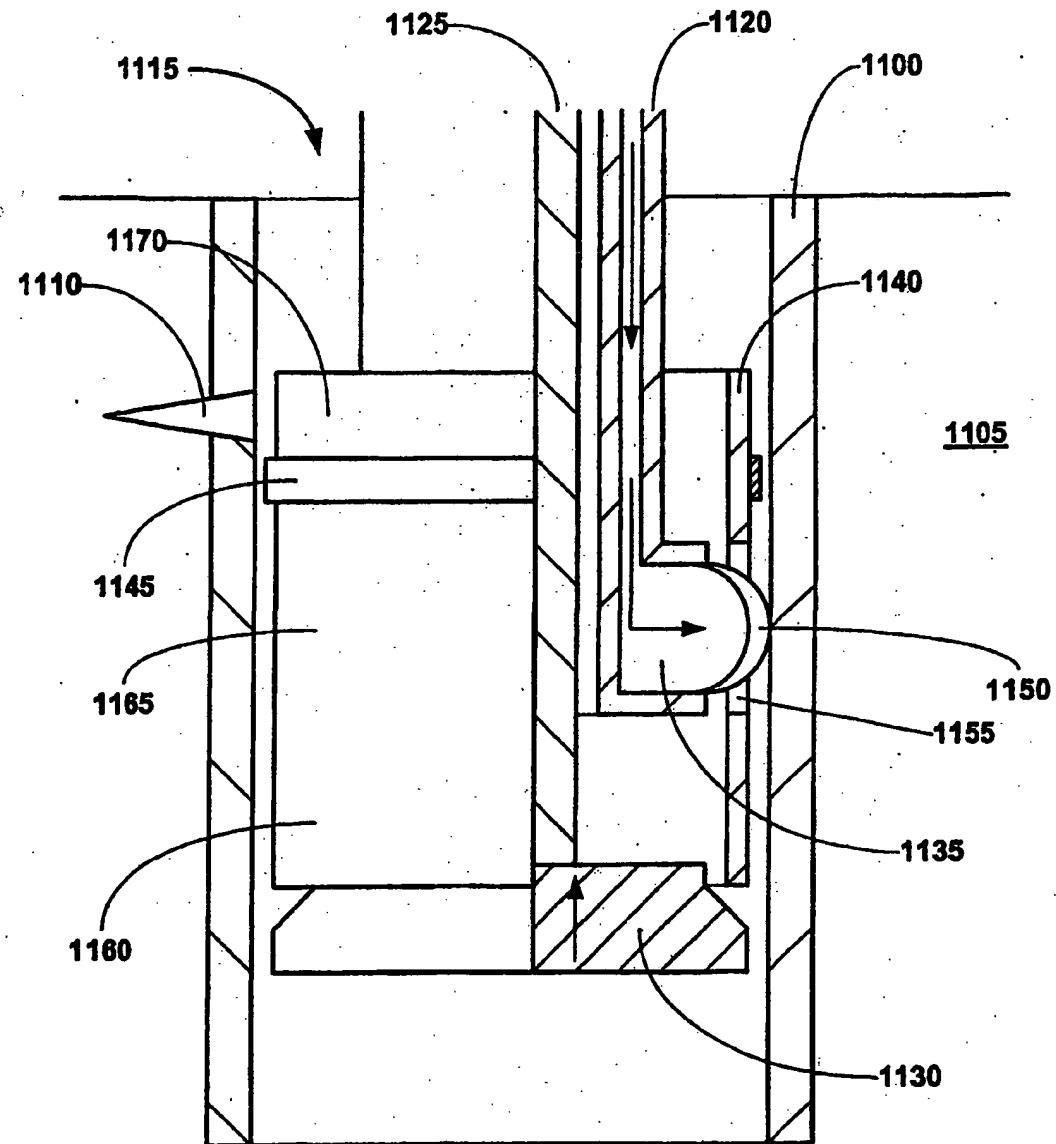


FIGURE 11c

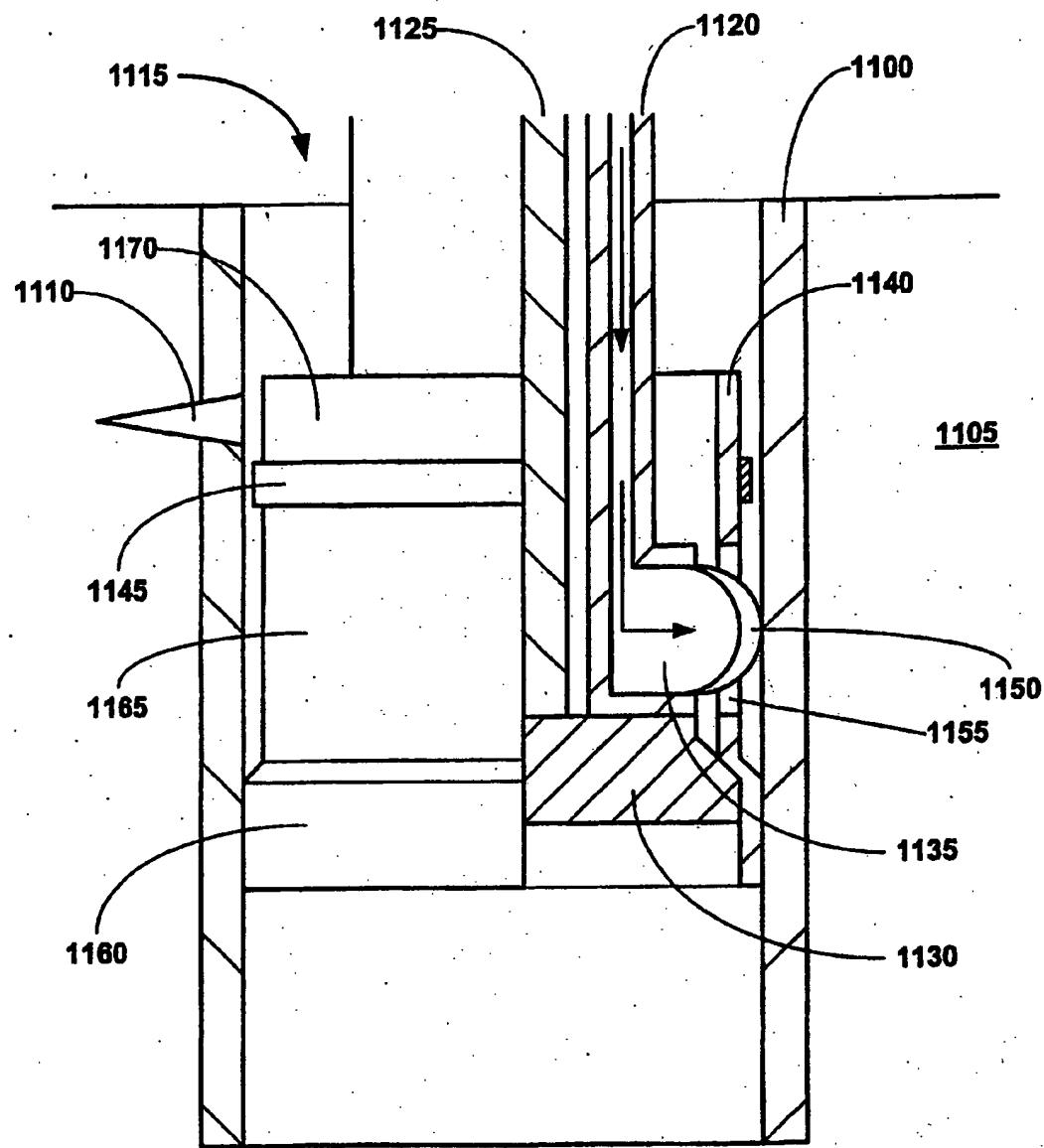


FIGURE 11d

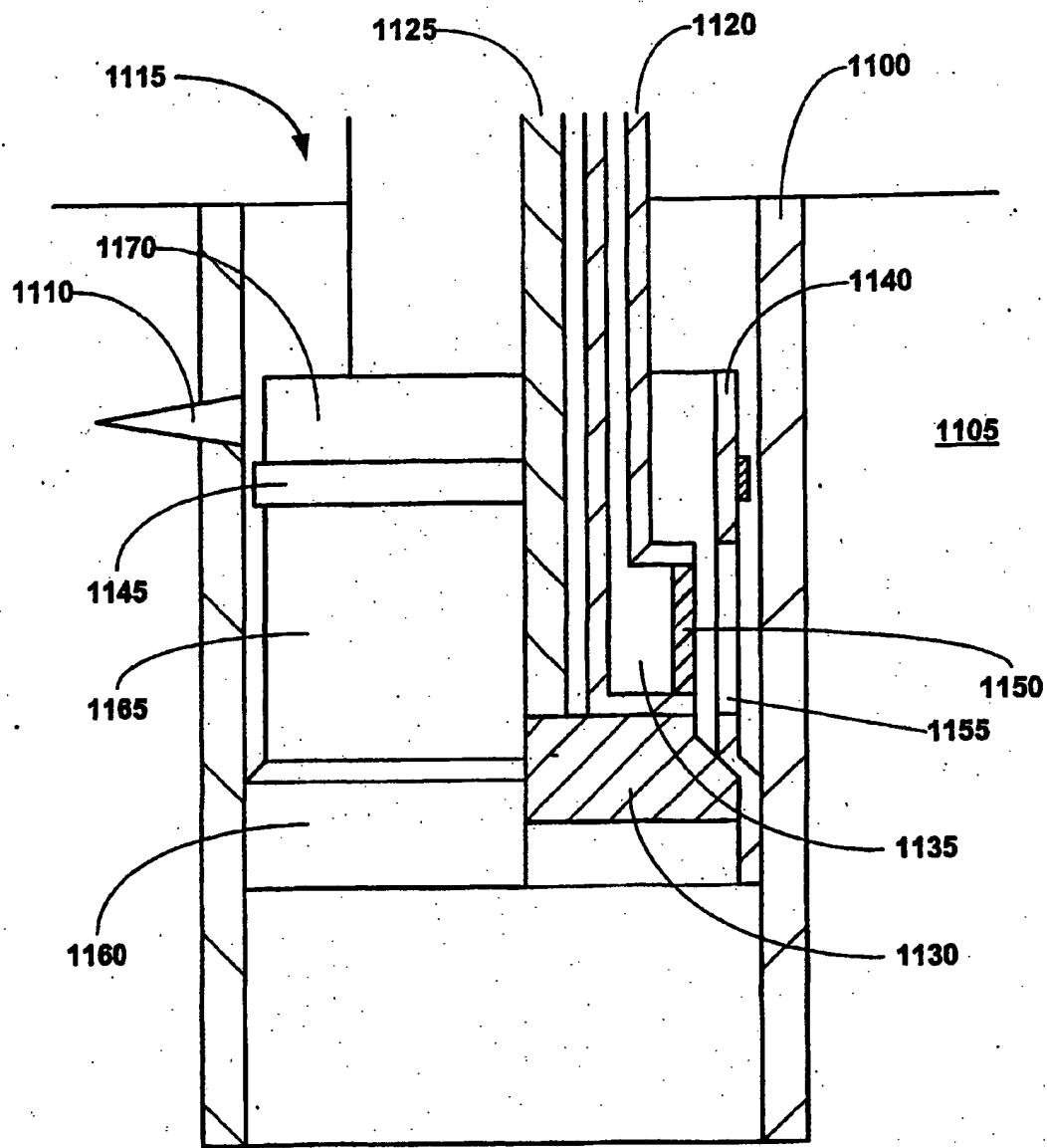


FIGURE 11e

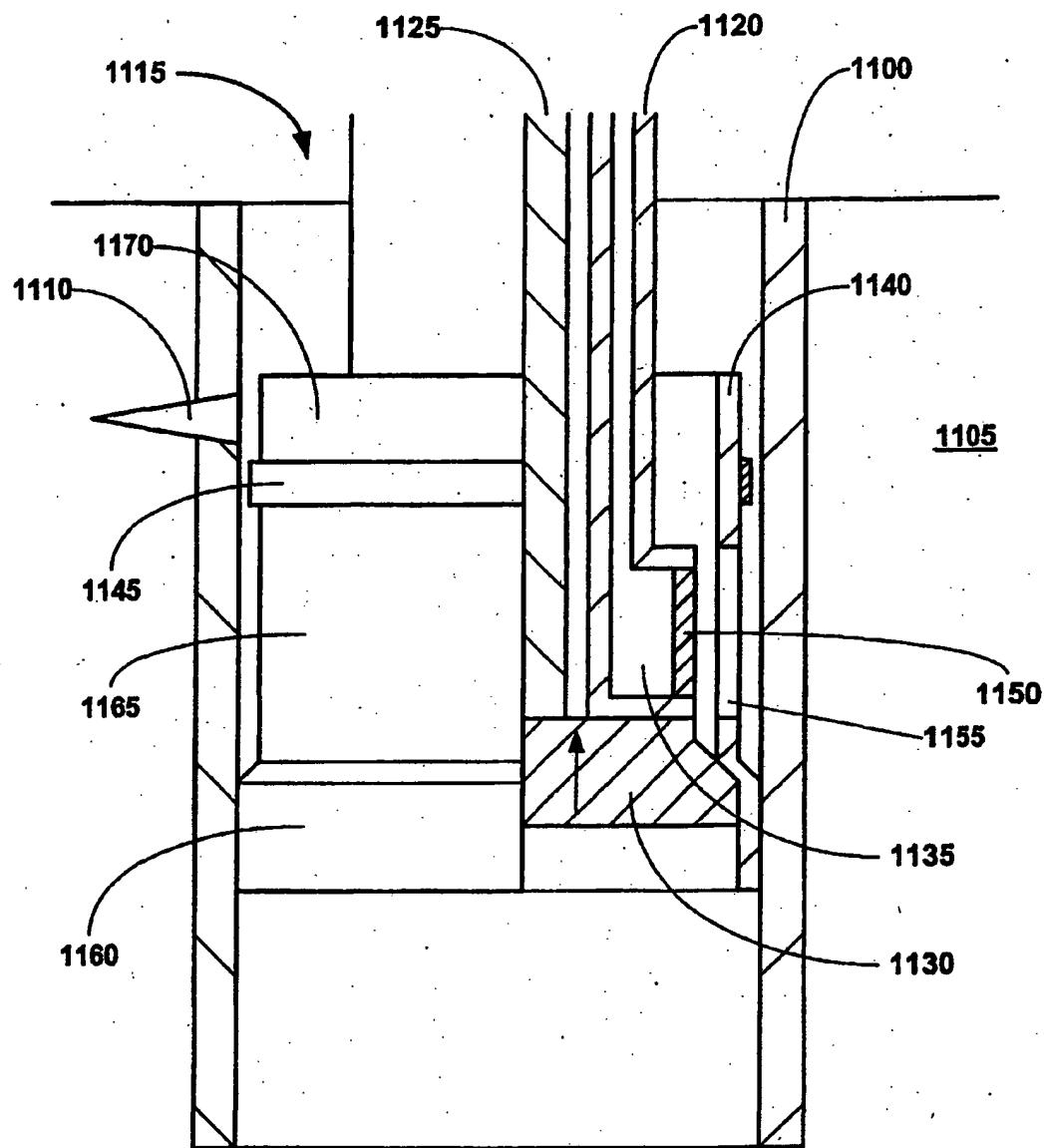


FIGURE 11f

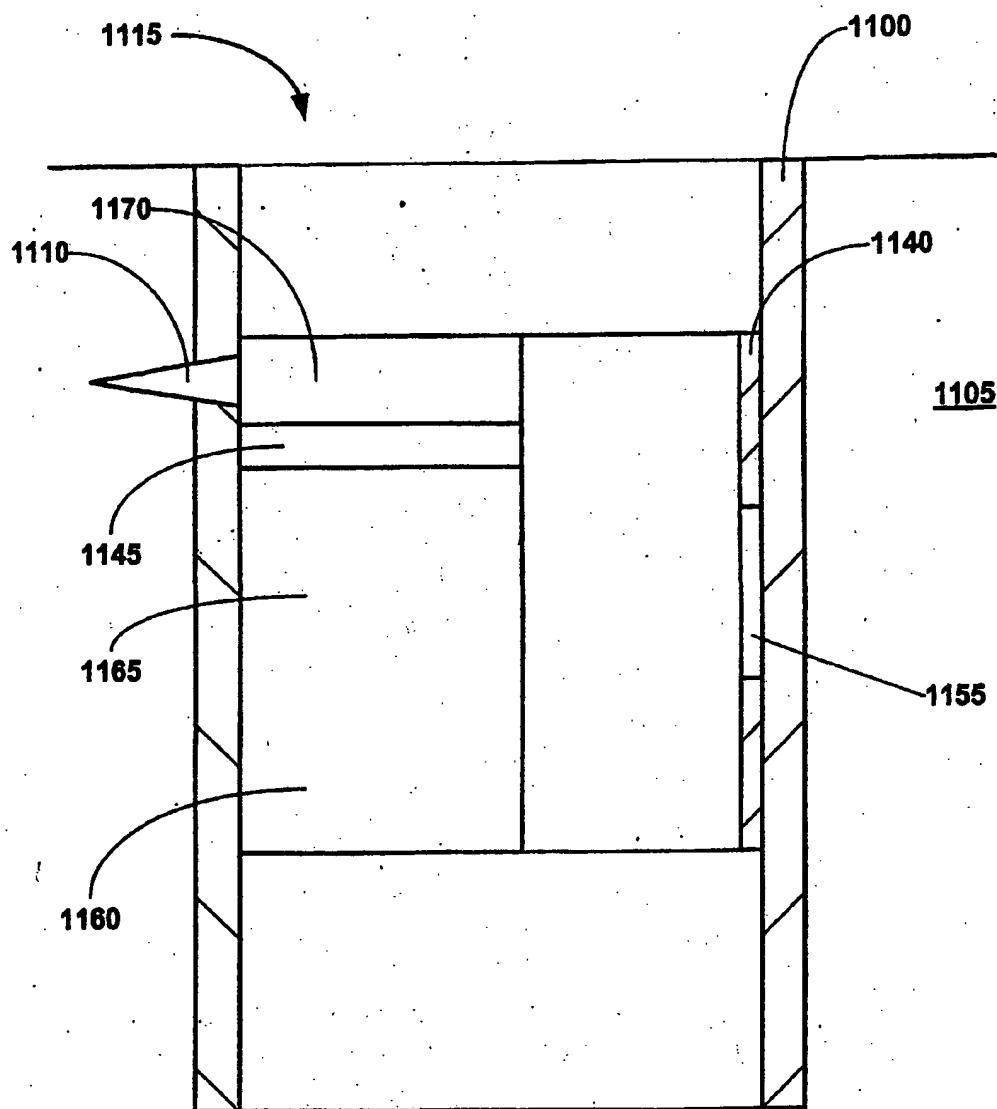


FIGURE 11g

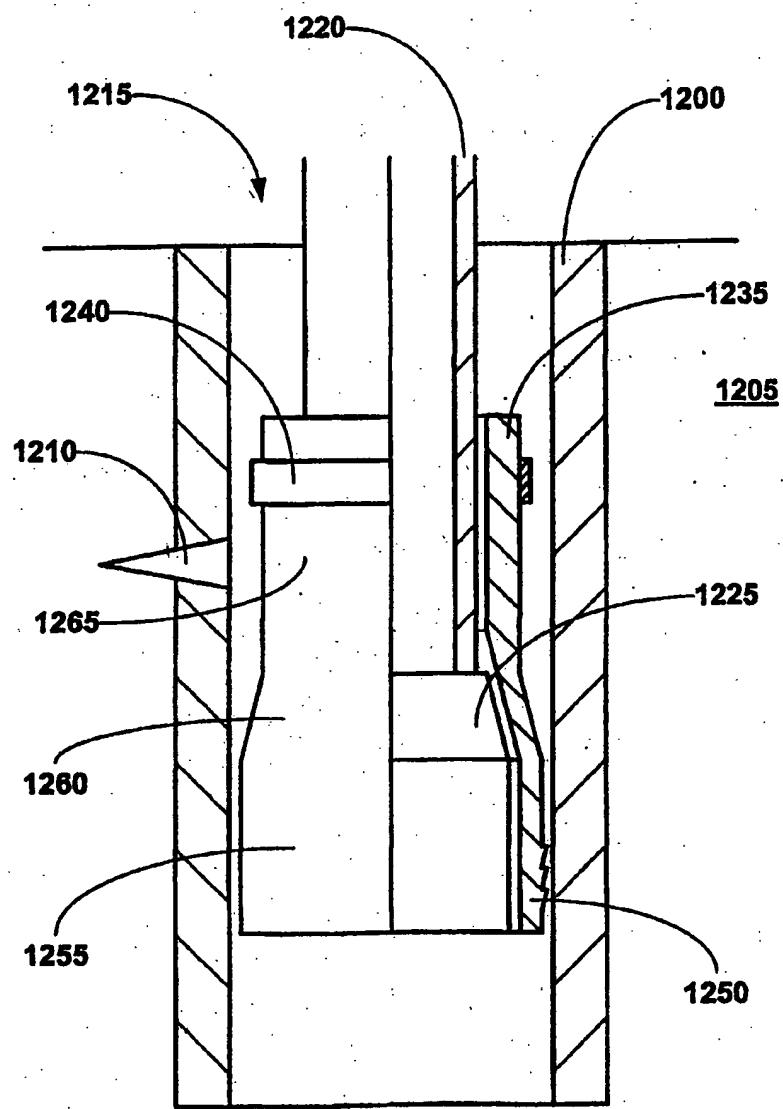
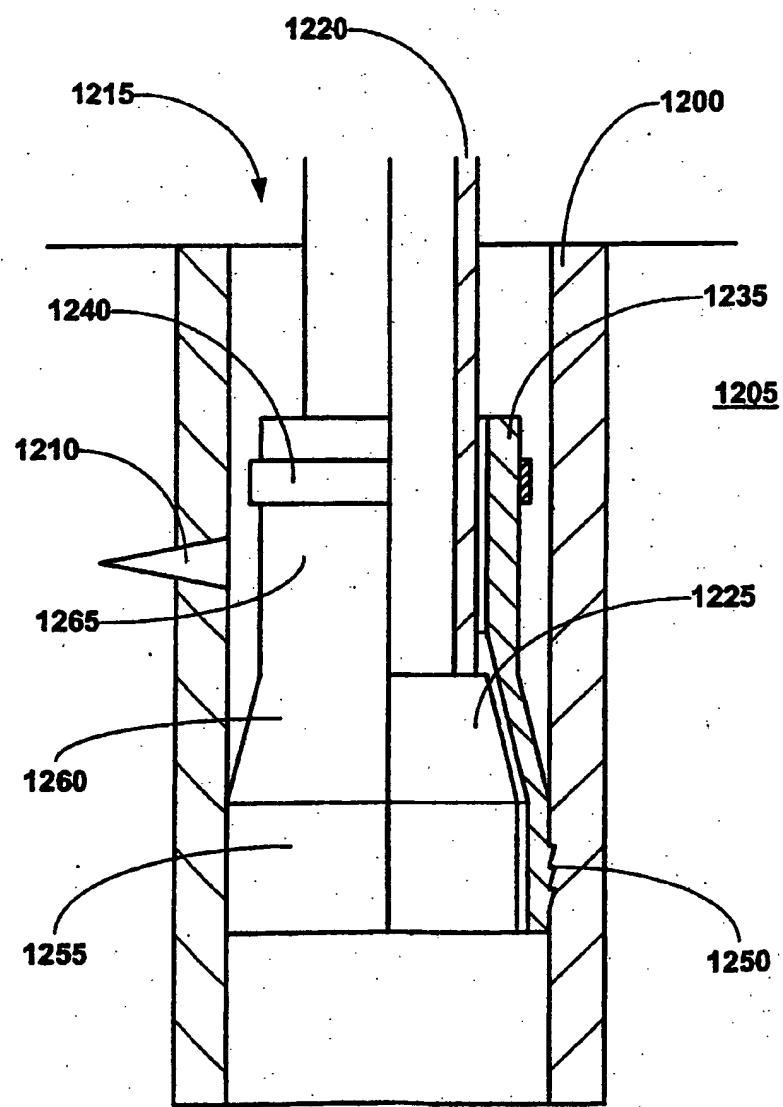


FIGURE 12a



**FIGURE 12b**

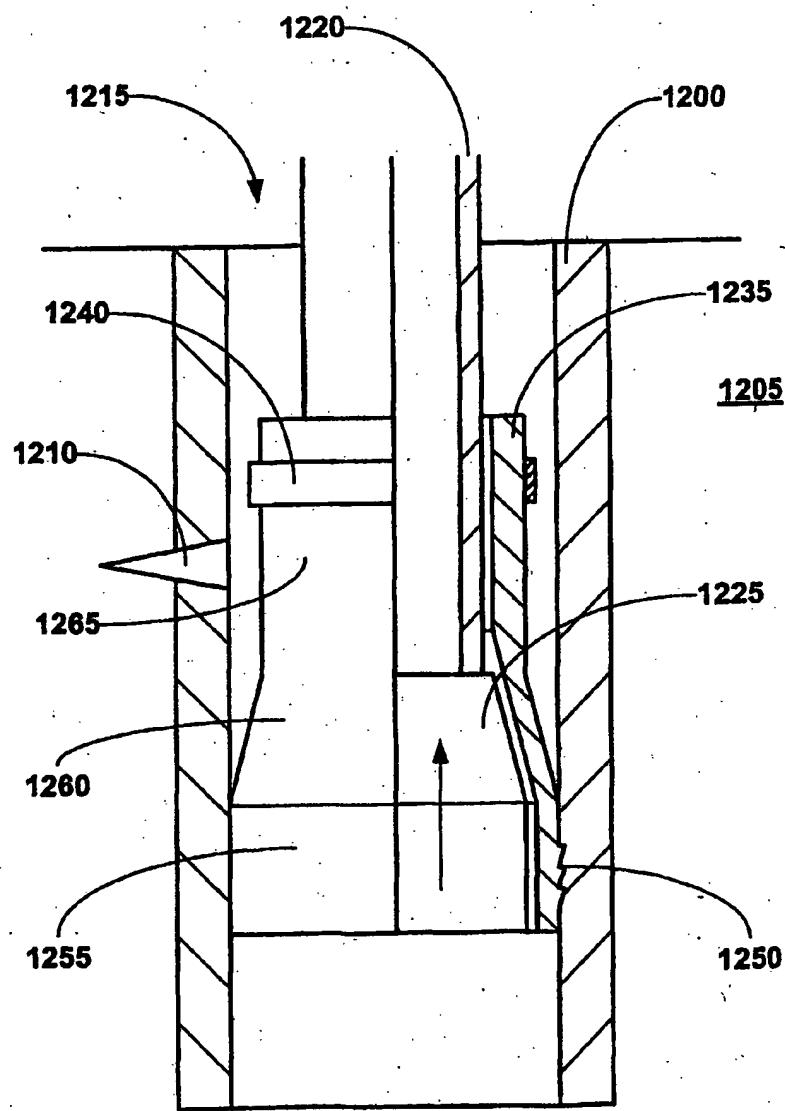


FIGURE 12c

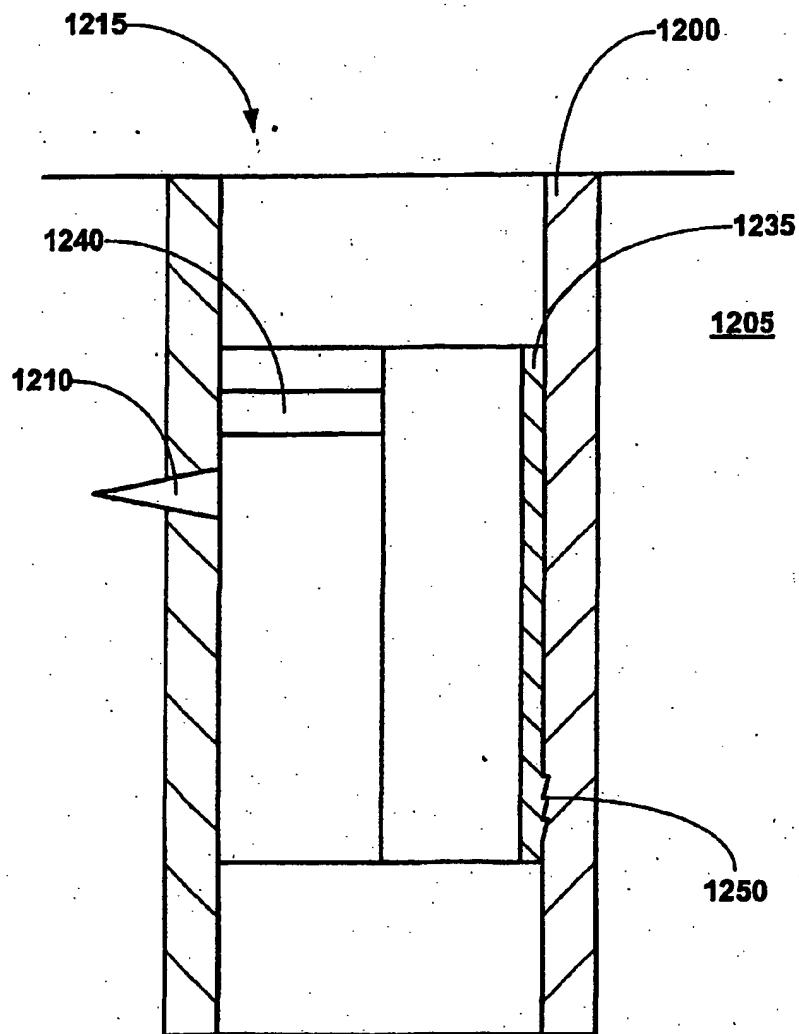
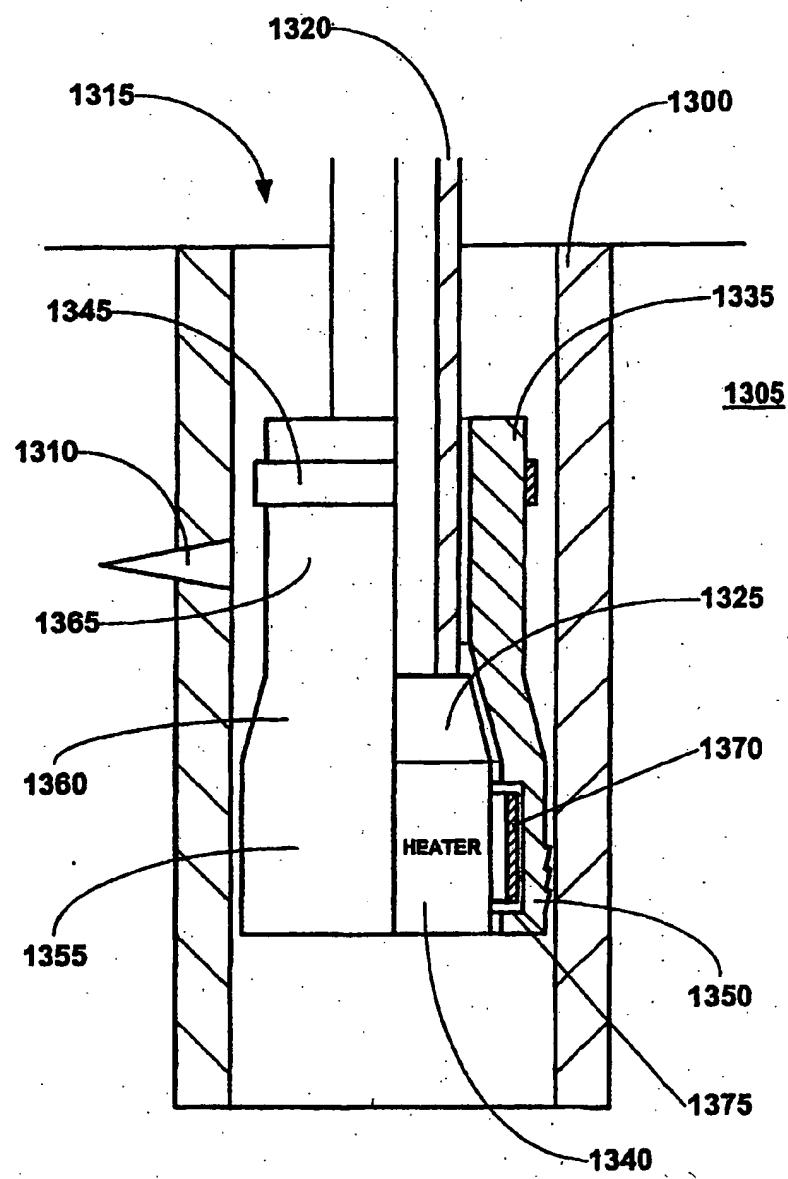
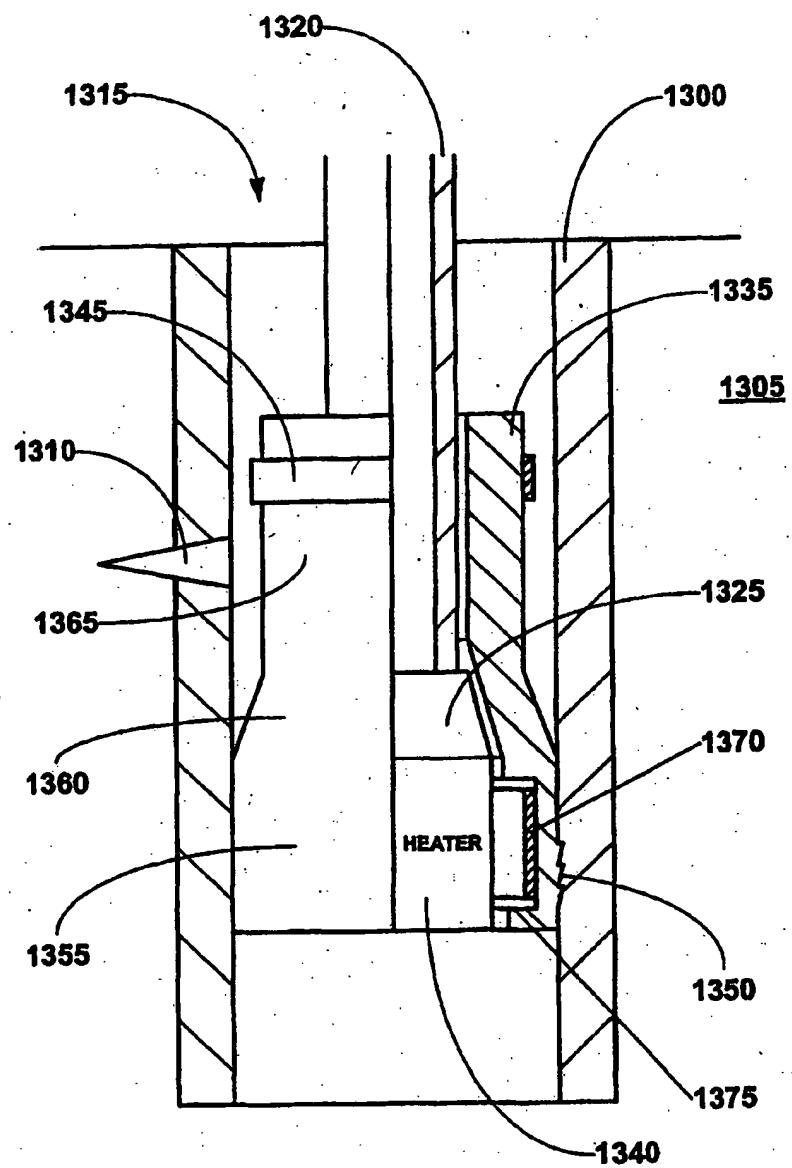


FIGURE 12d



**FIGURE 13a**



**FIGURE 13b**

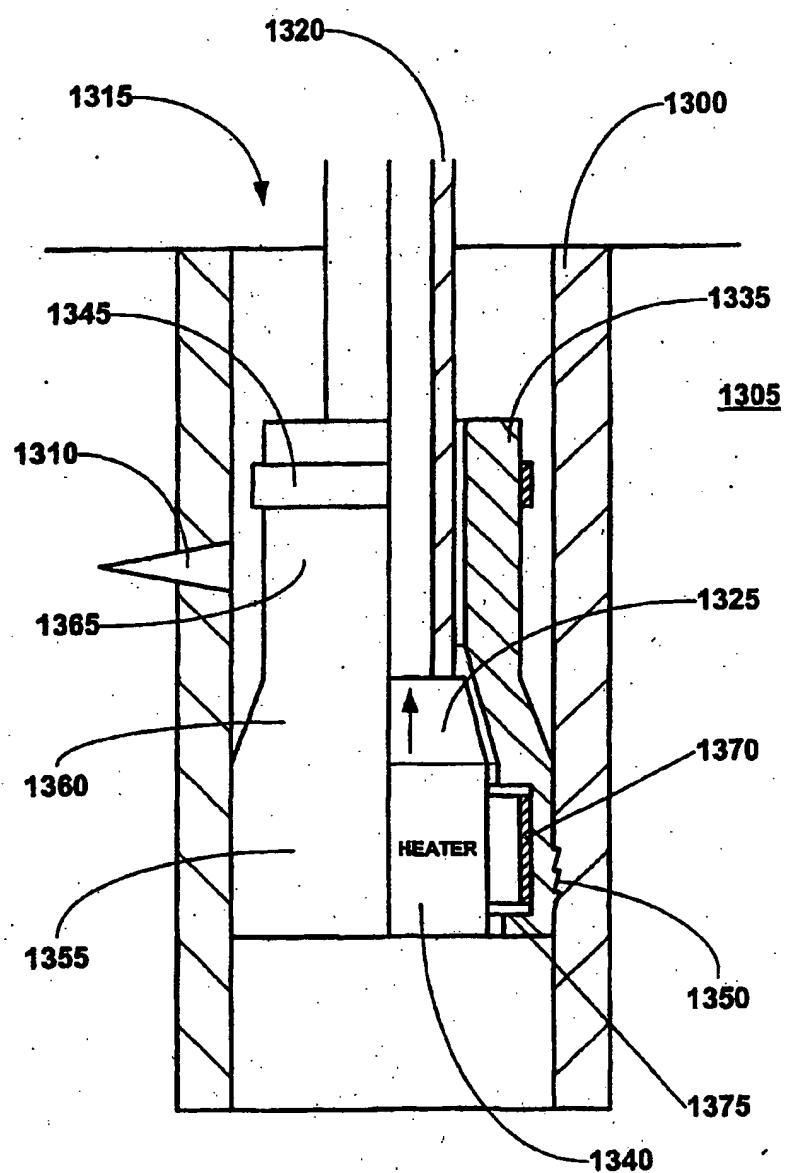


FIGURE 13c

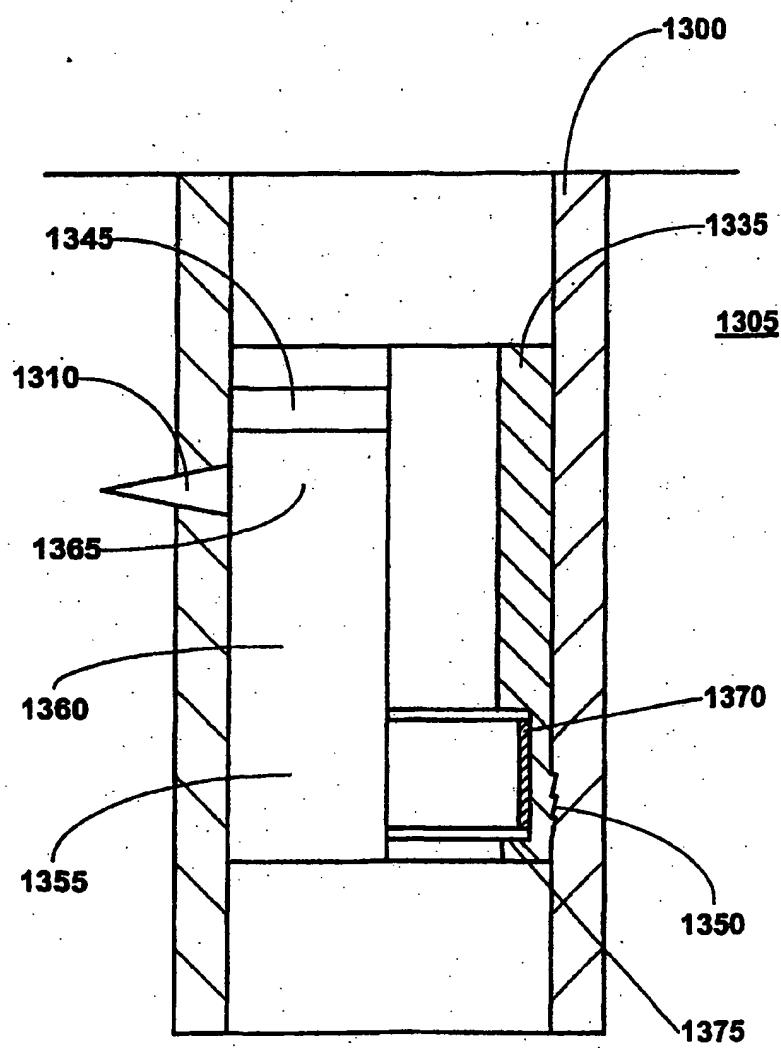
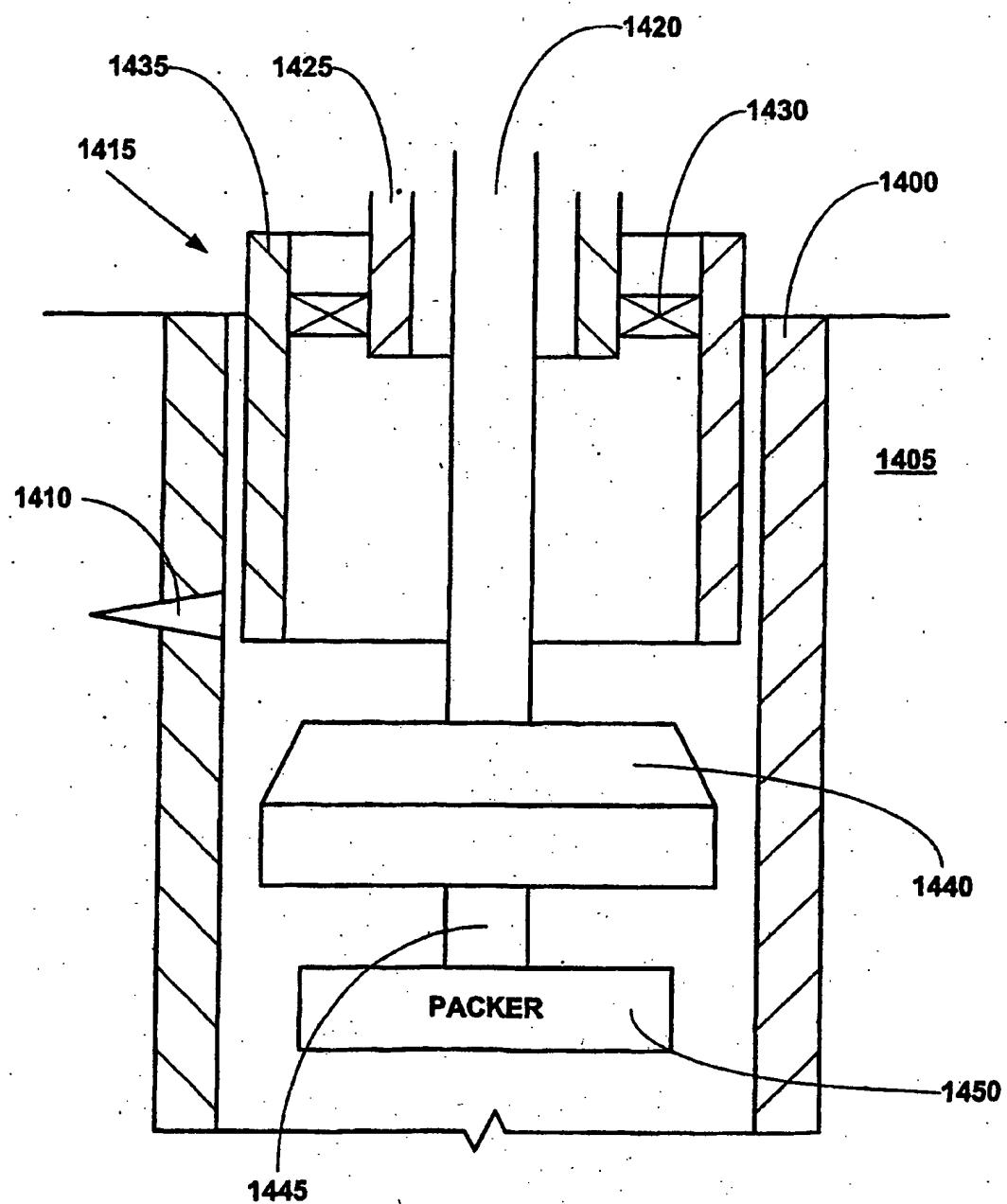


FIGURE 13d



**FIGURE 14a**

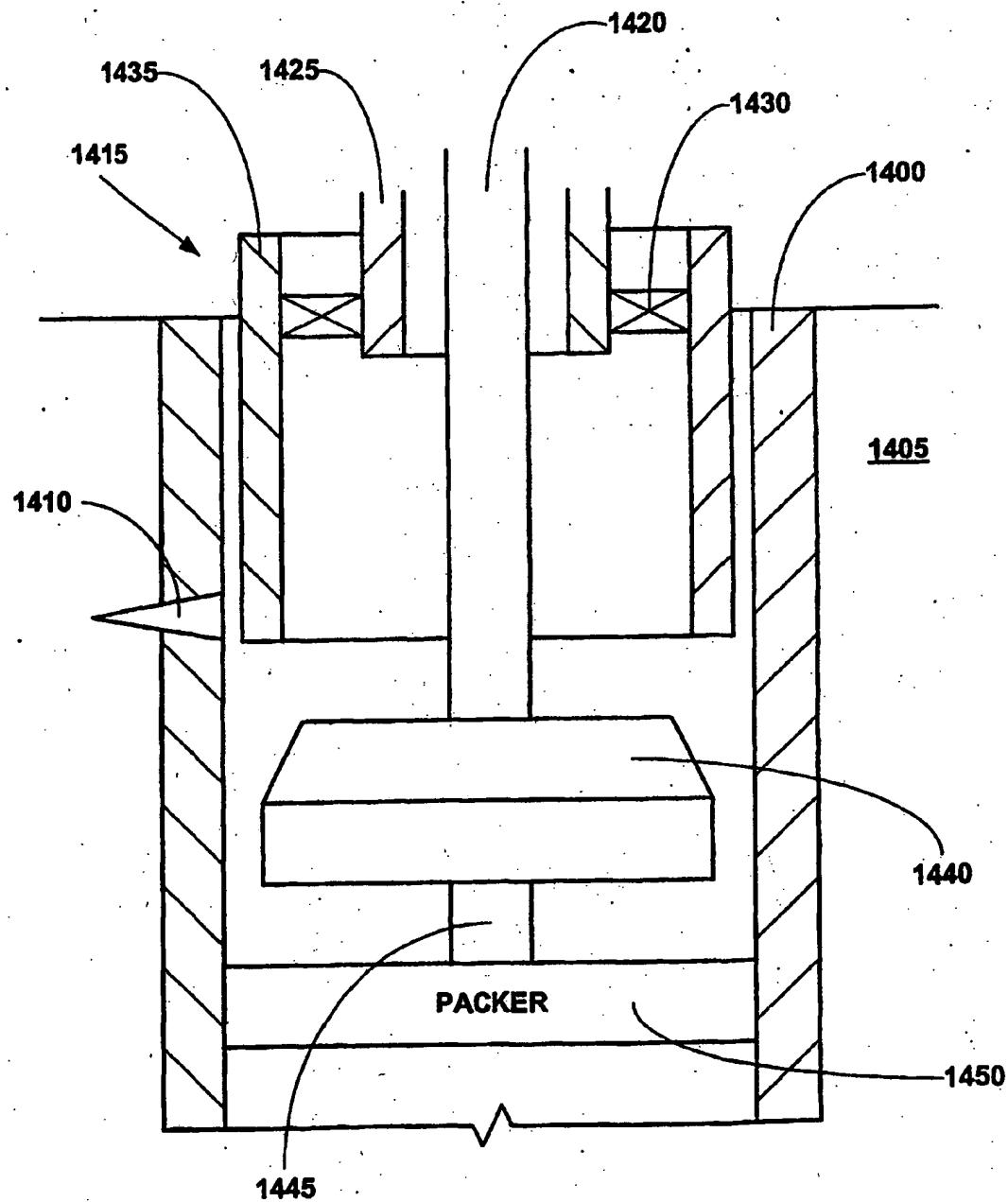


FIGURE 14b

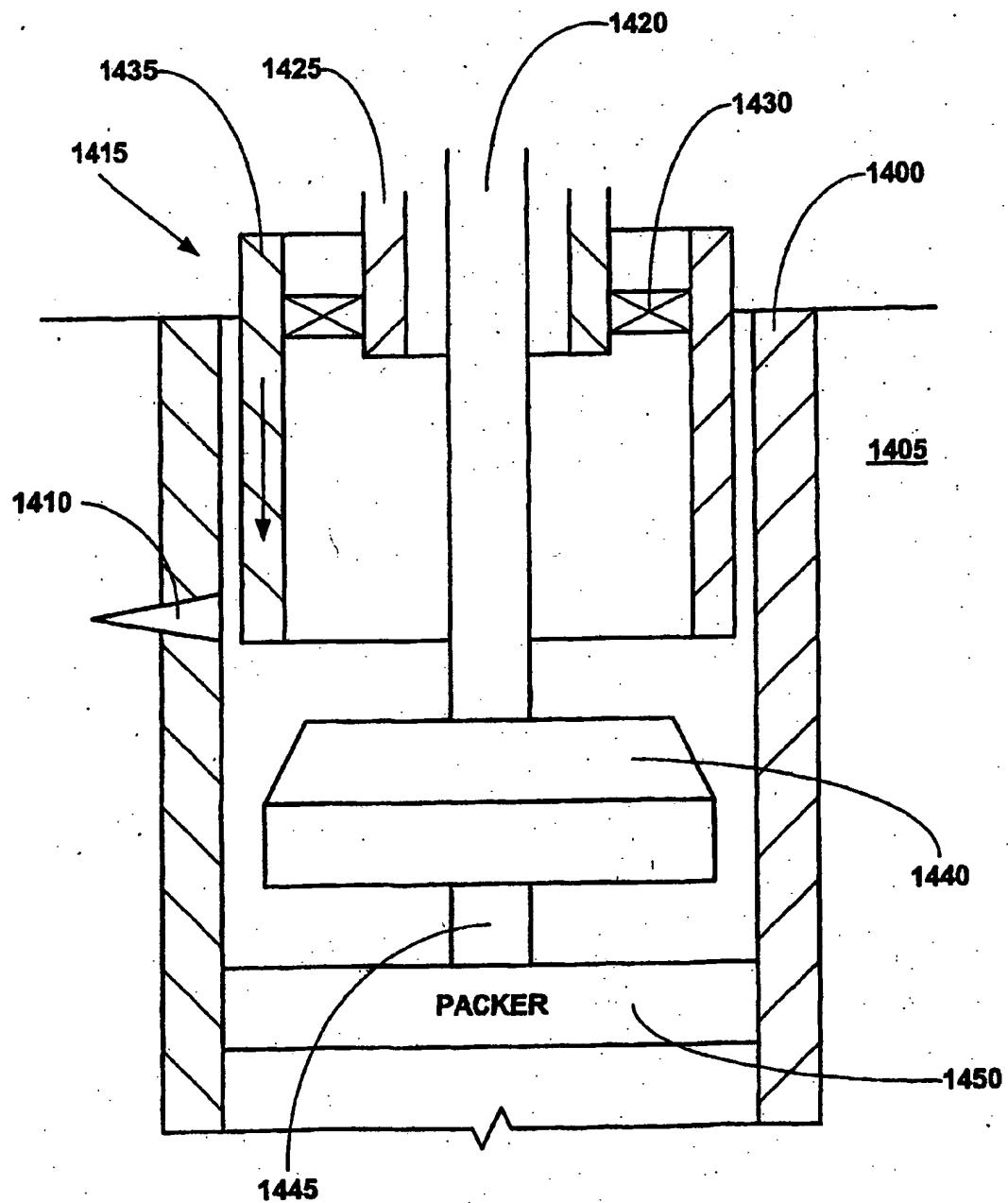


FIGURE 14c

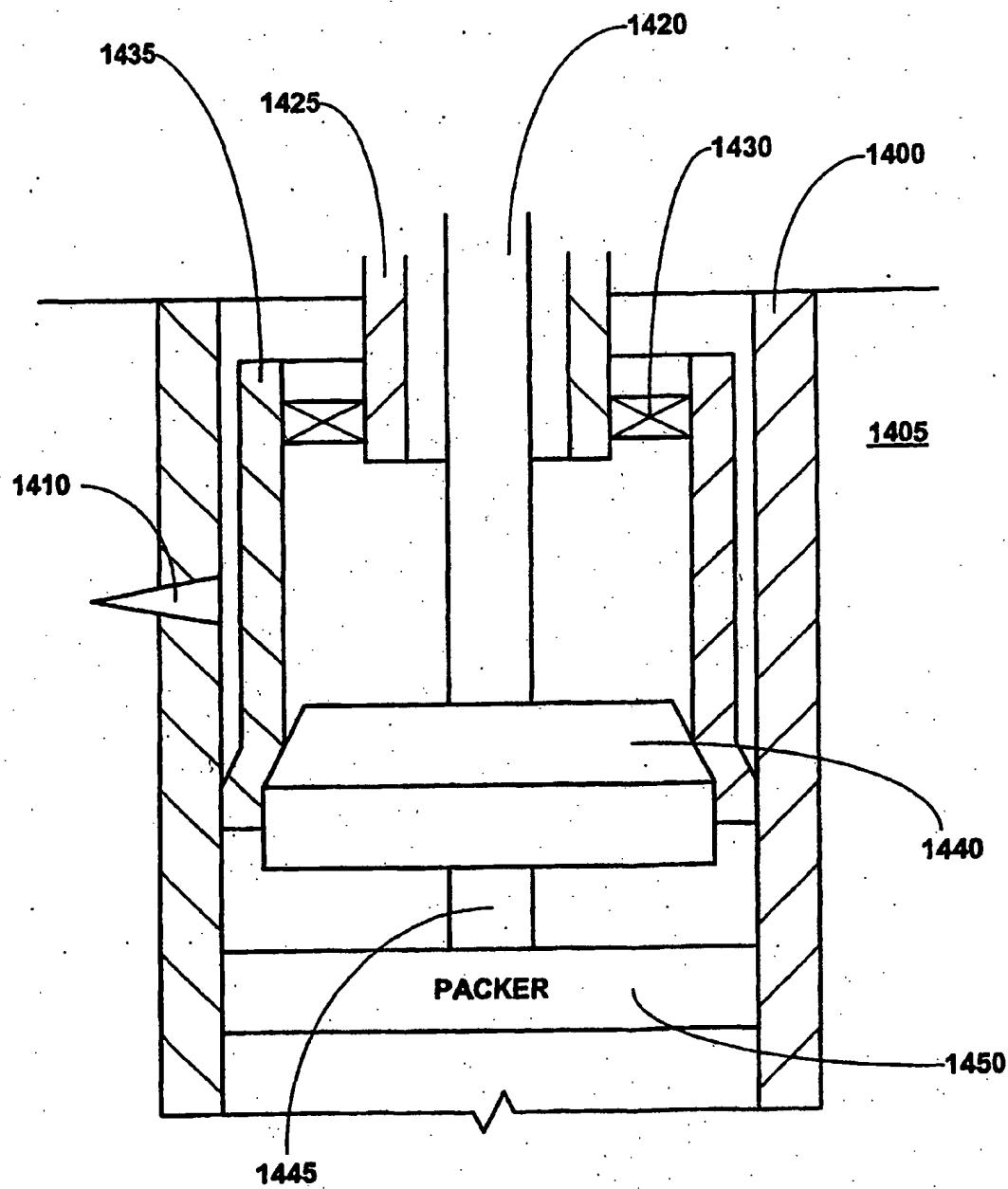


FIGURE 14d

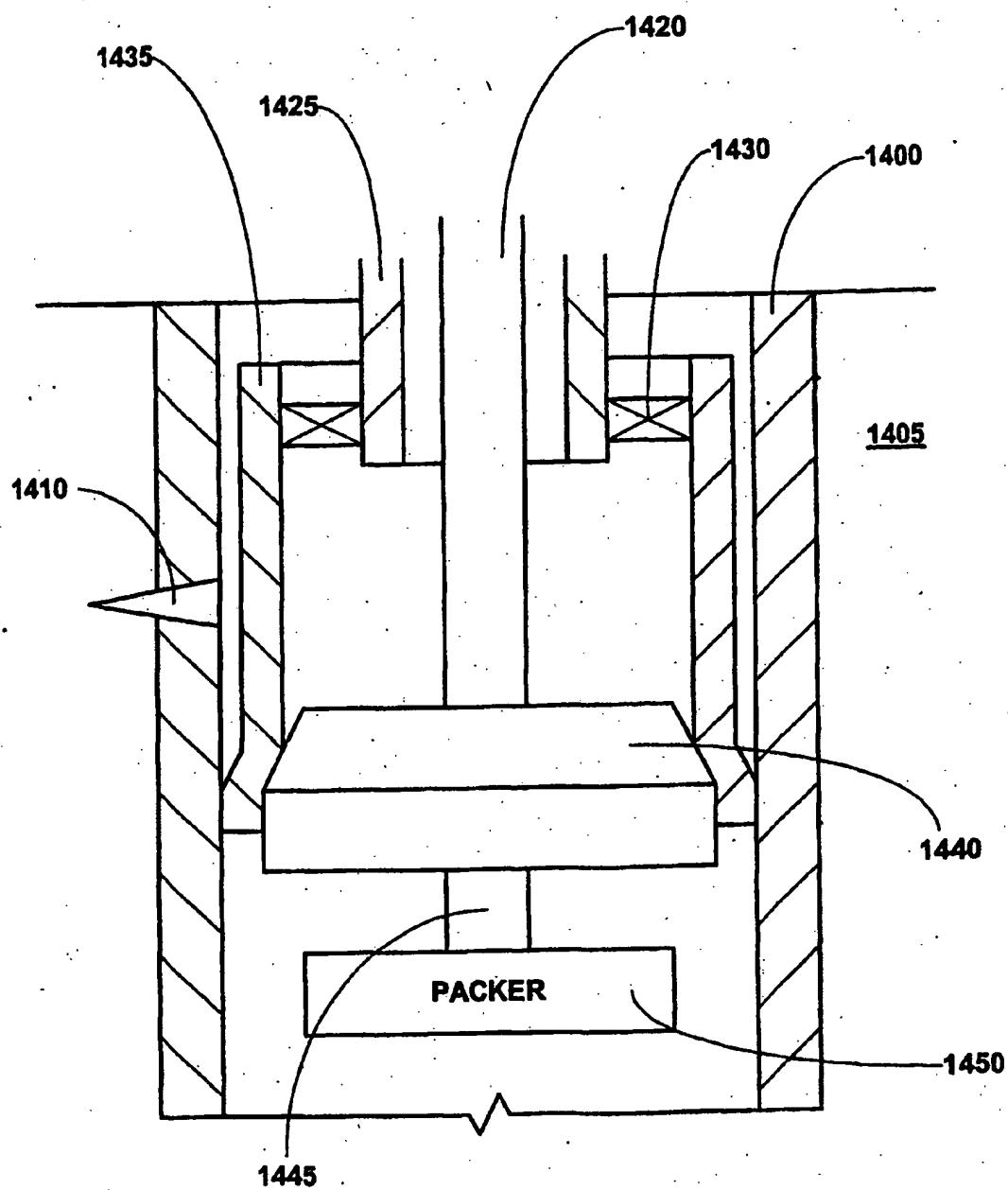


FIGURE 14e

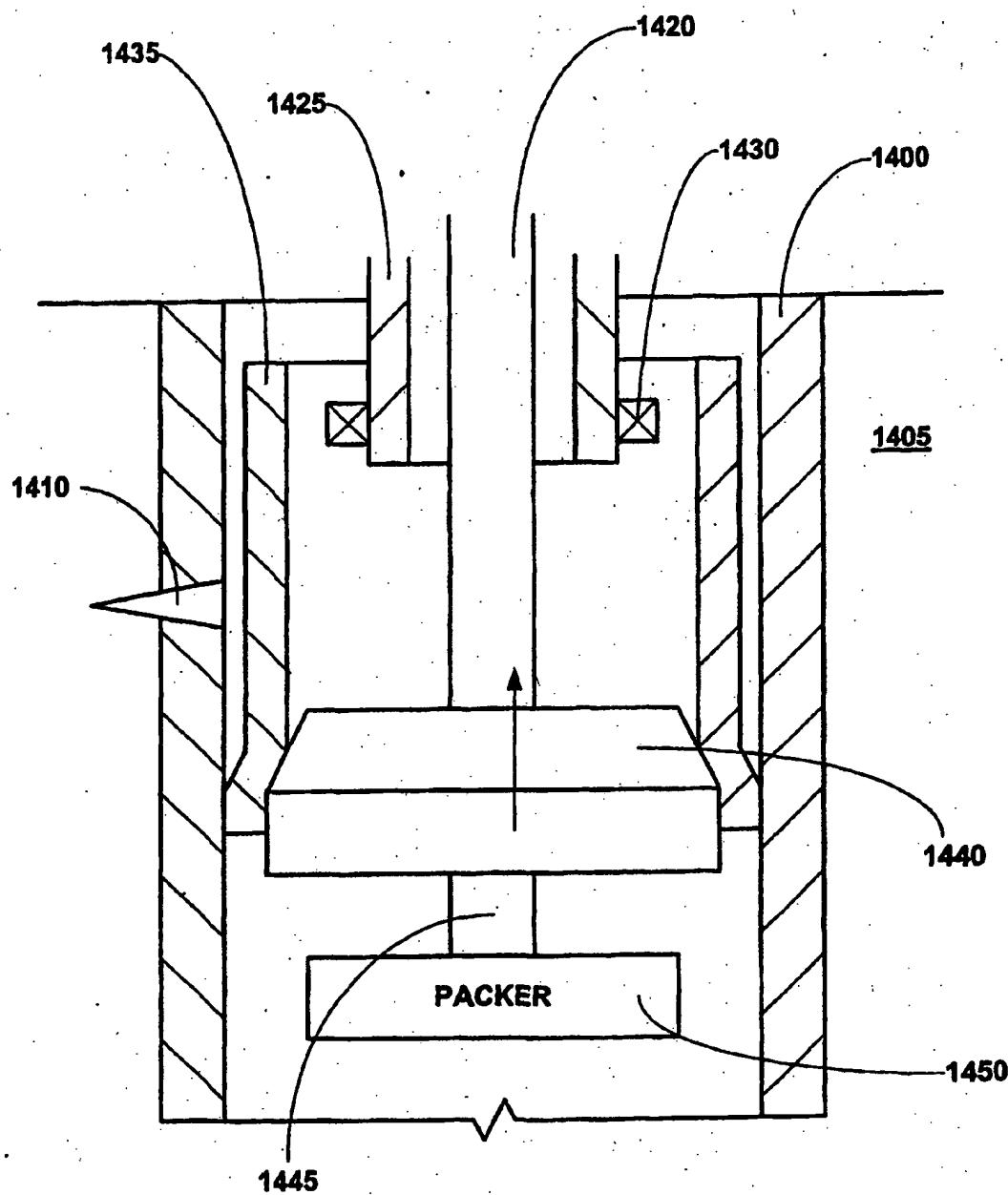


FIGURE 14f

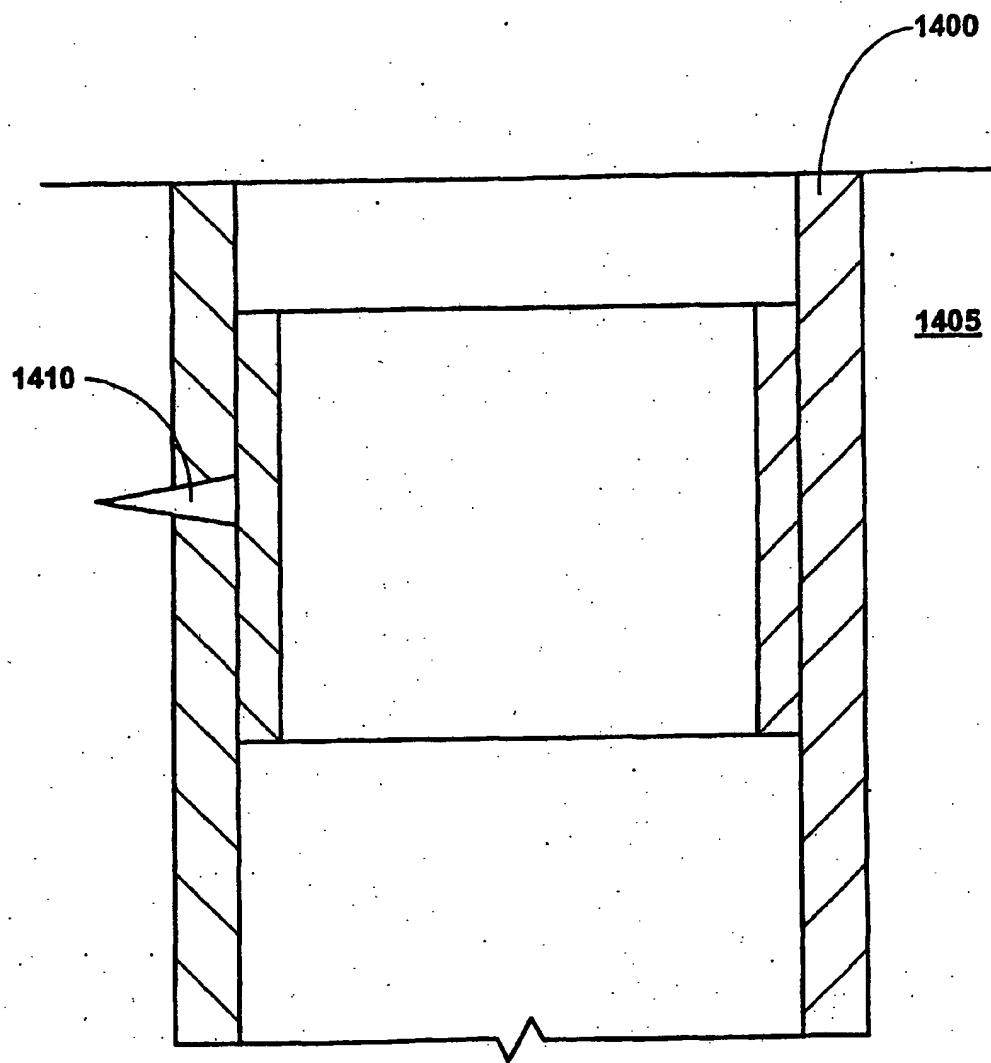


FIGURE 14g

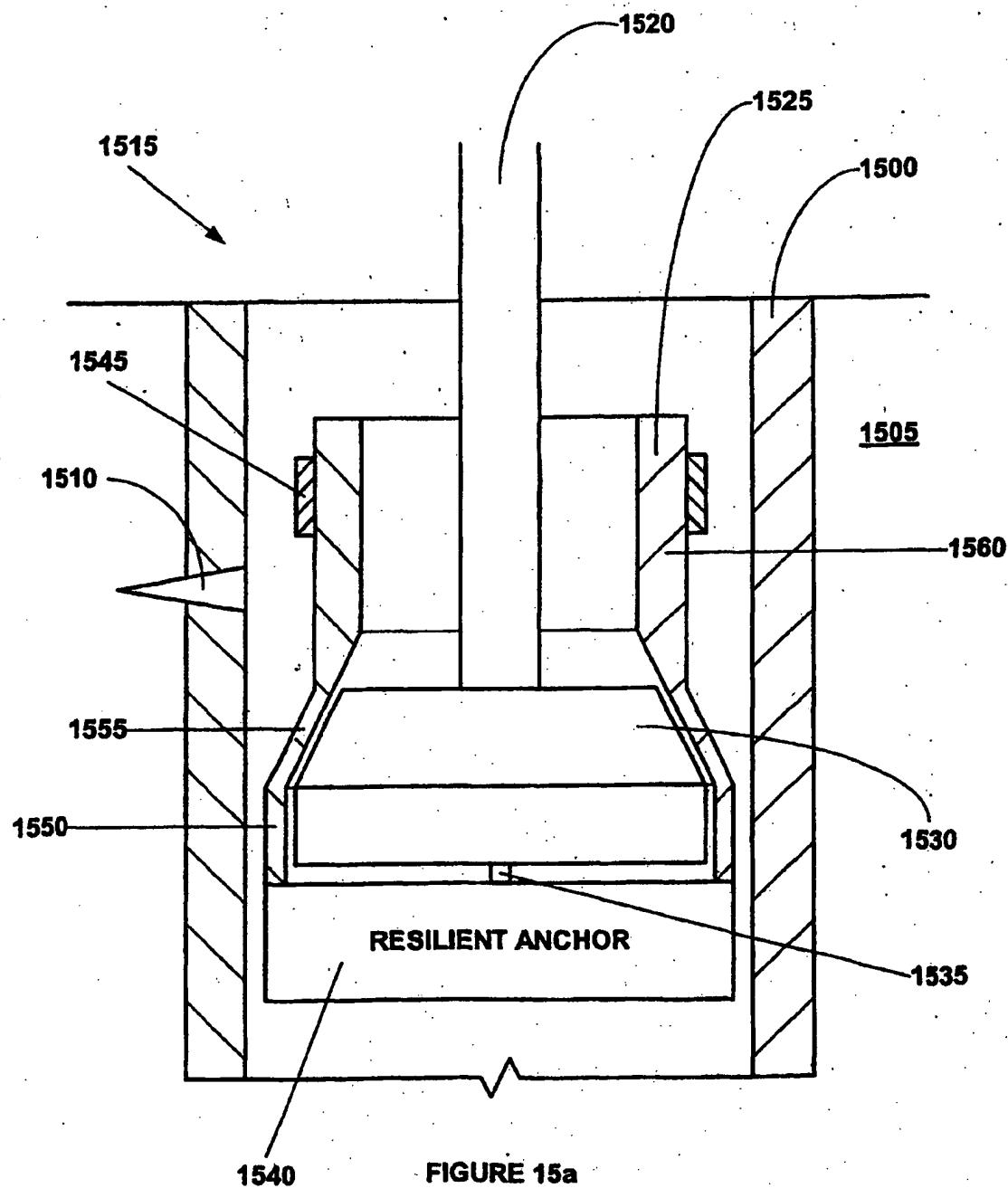


FIGURE 15a

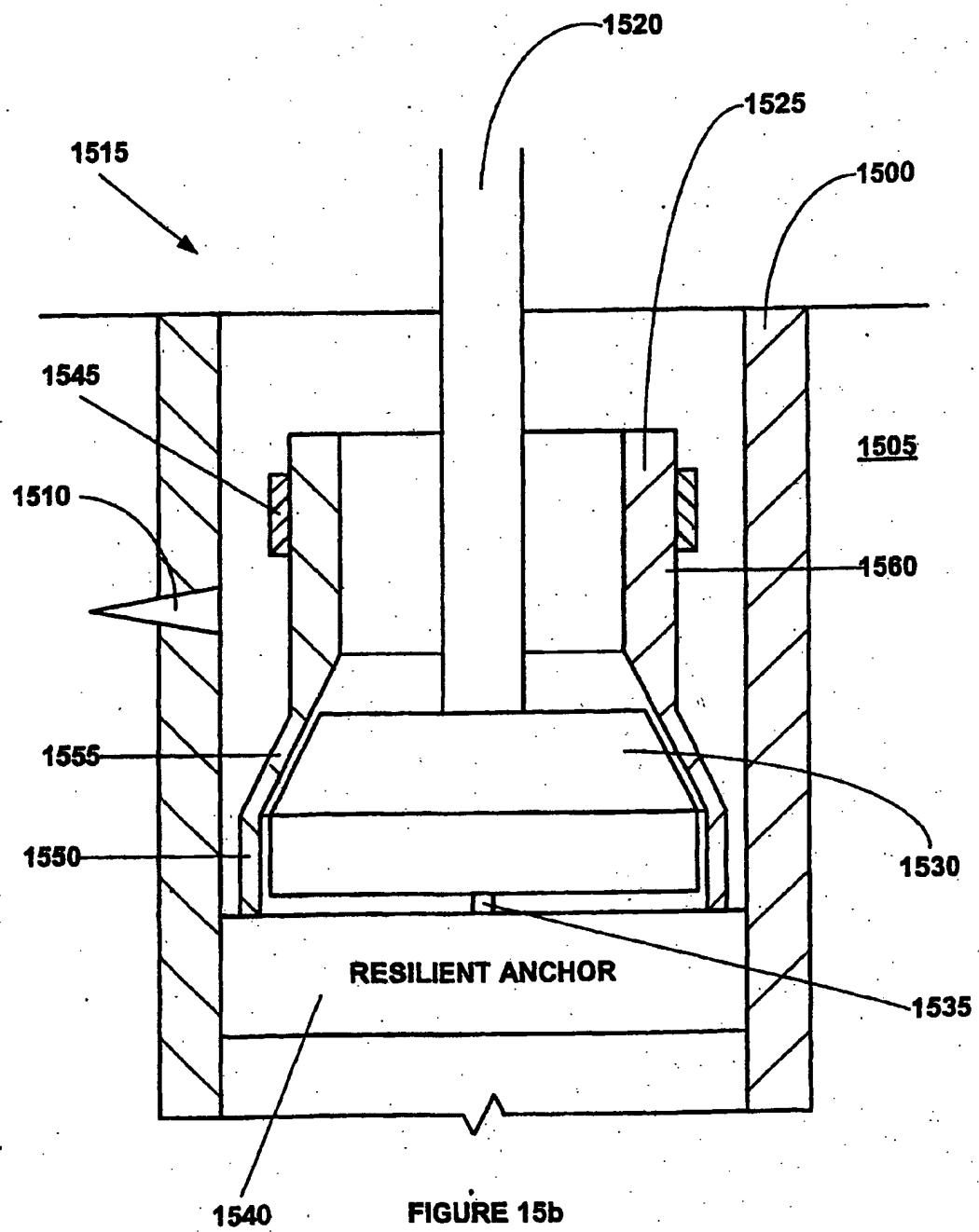


FIGURE 15b

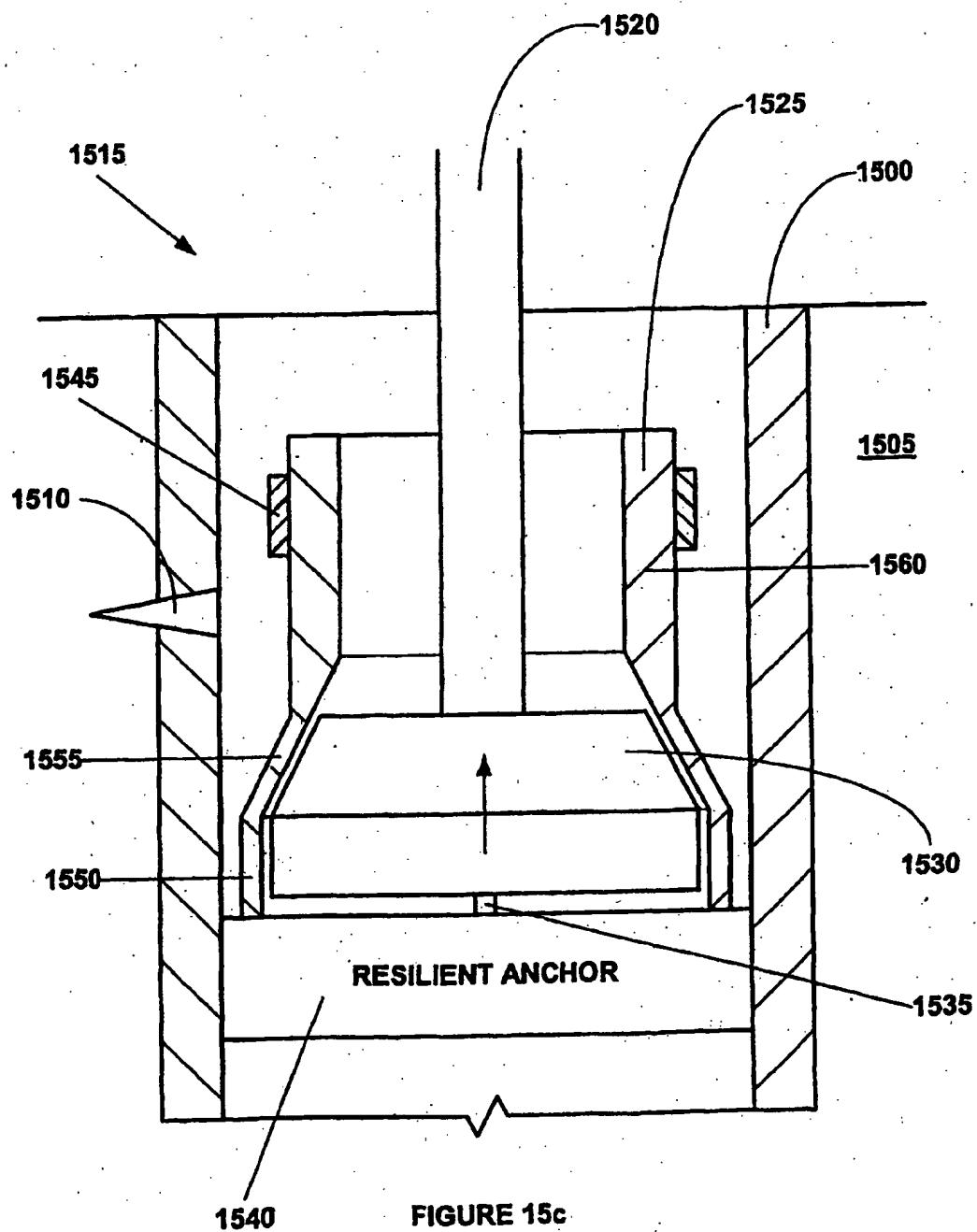


FIGURE 15c

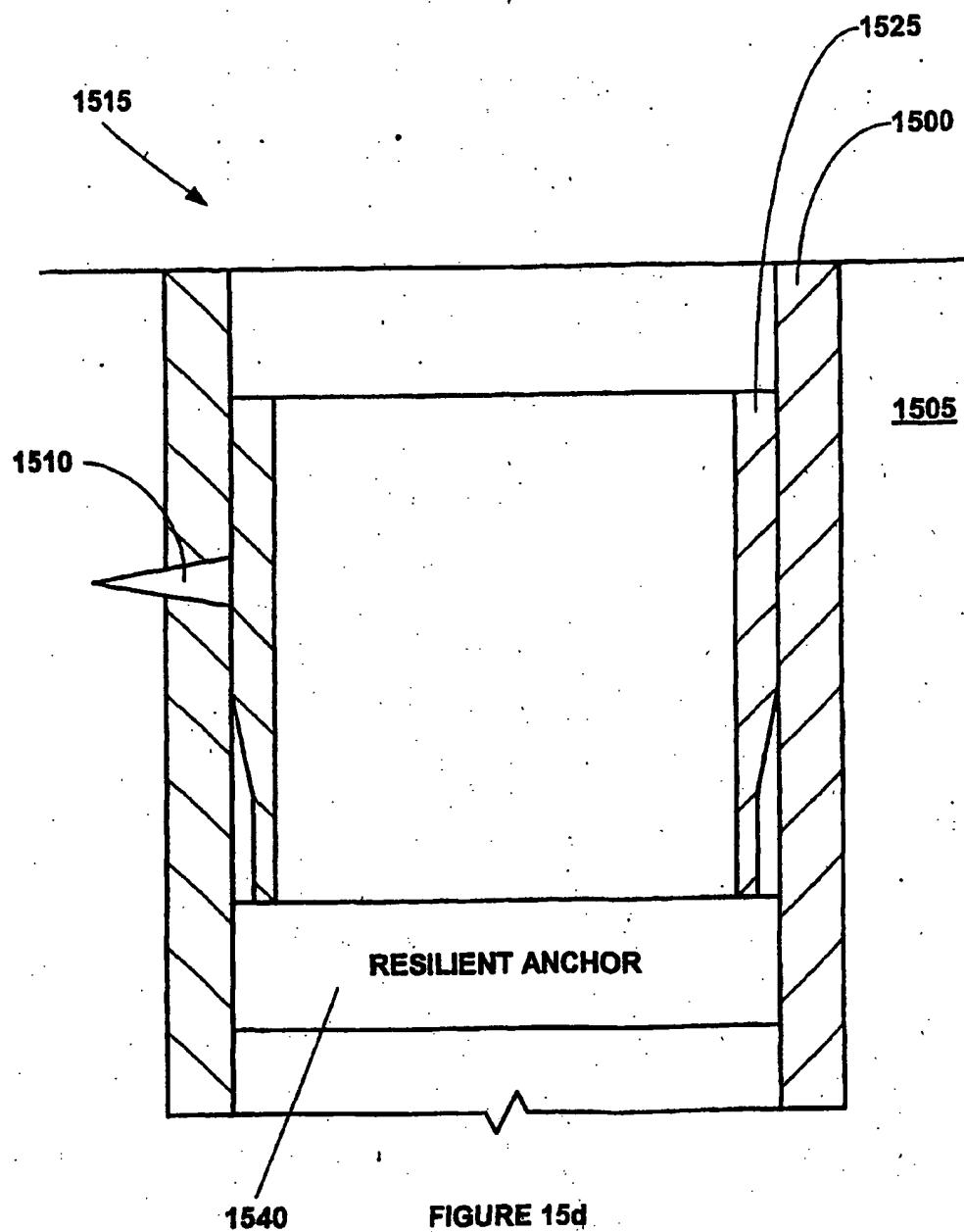


FIGURE 15d

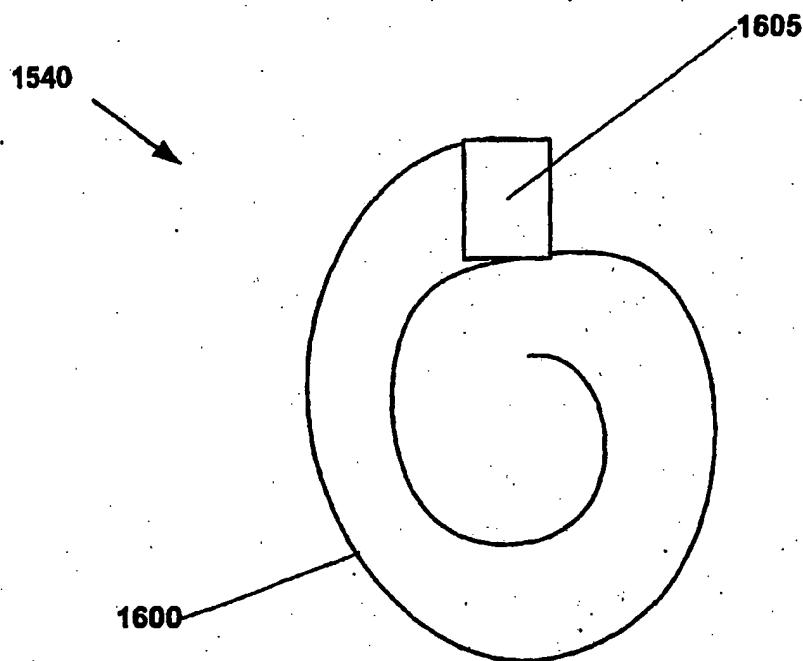


FIGURE 16a

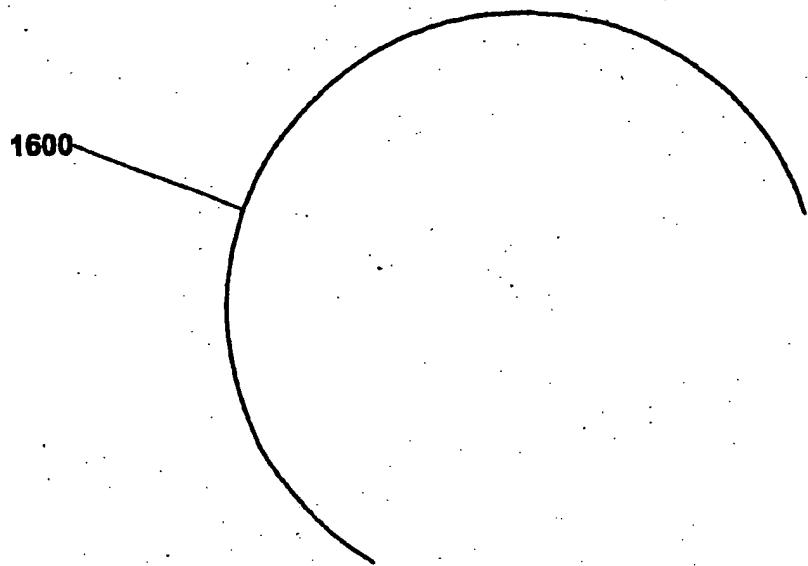


FIGURE 16b

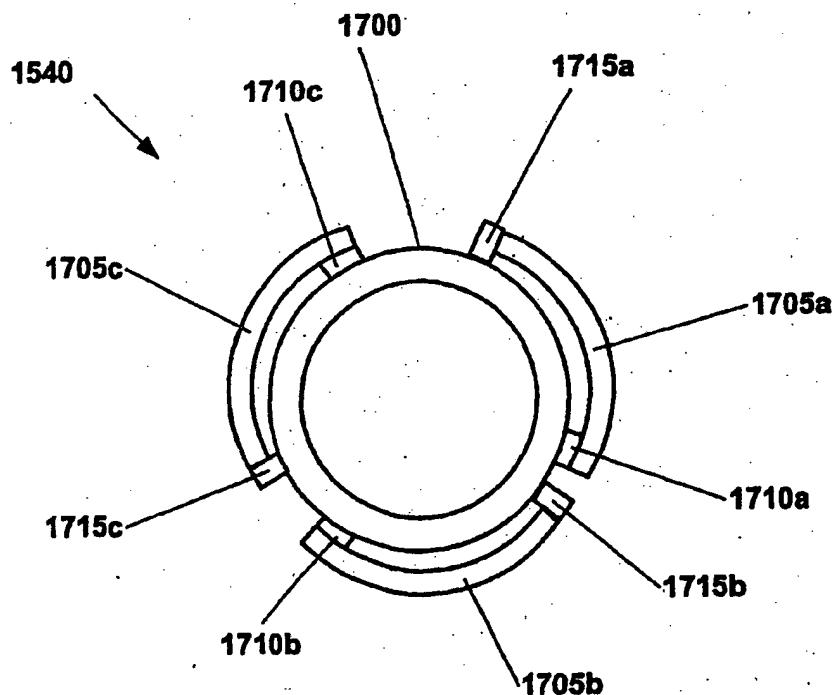


FIGURE 17a

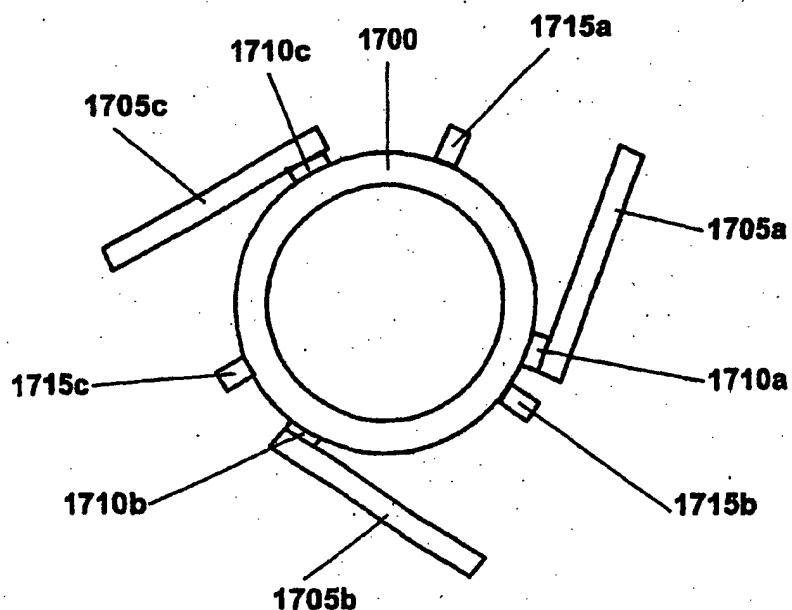


FIGURE 17b

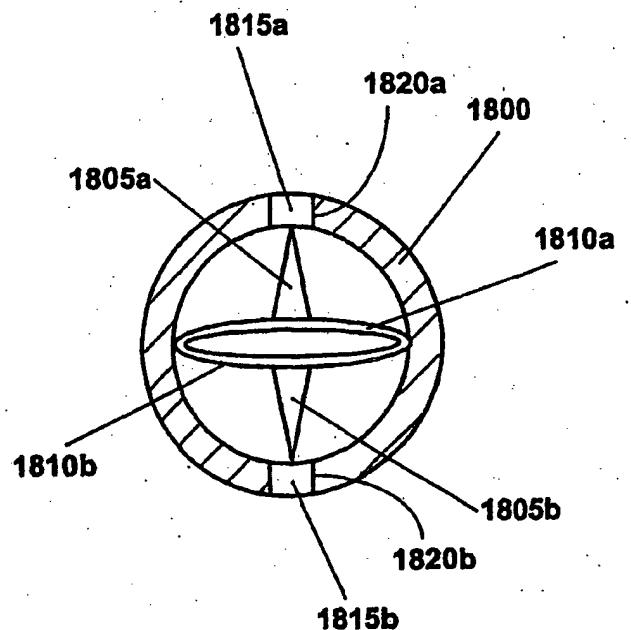


FIGURE 18a

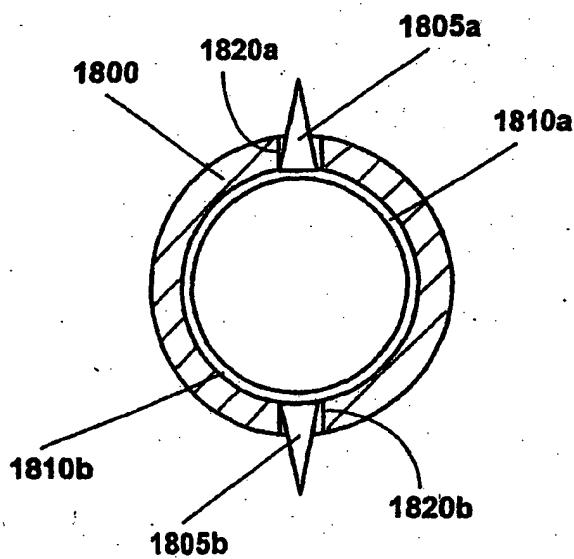


FIGURE 18b

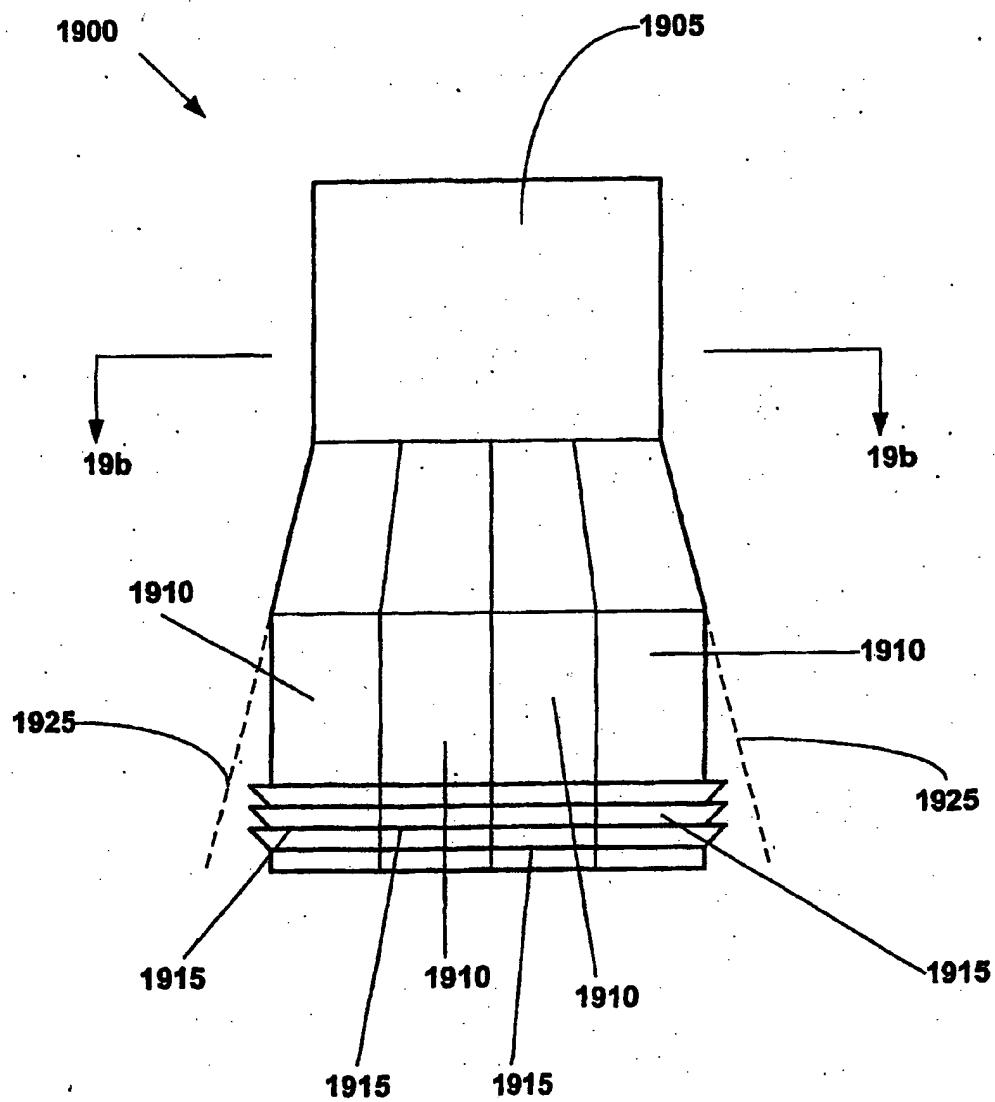


FIGURE 19a

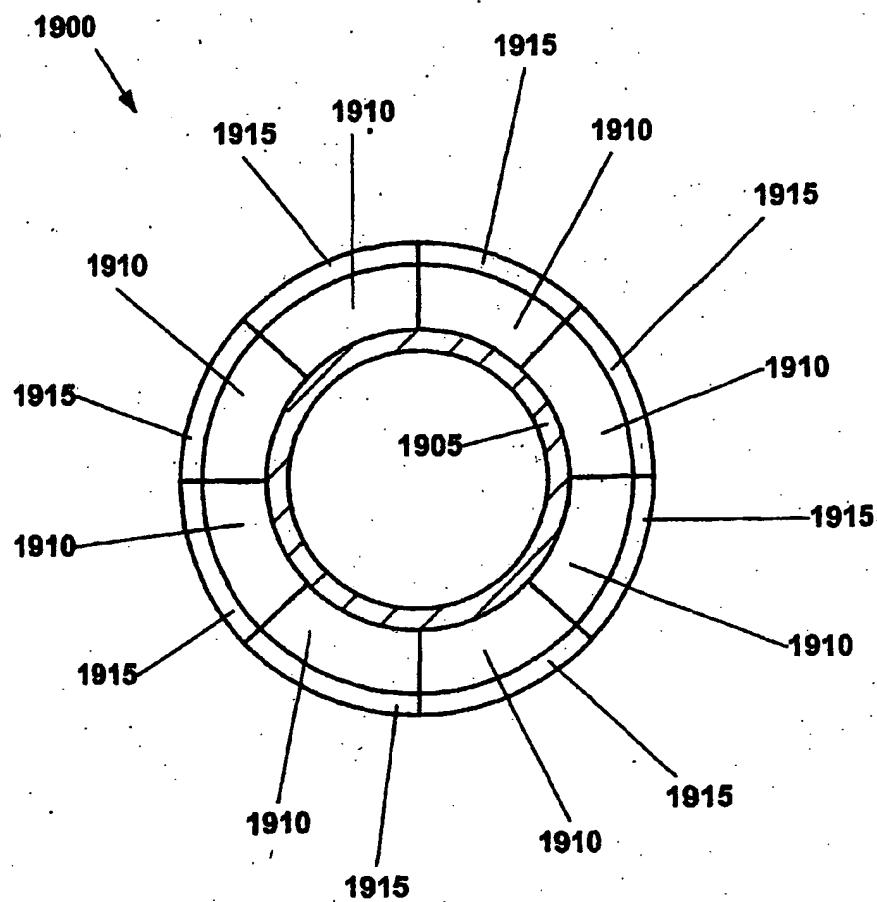


FIGURE 19b

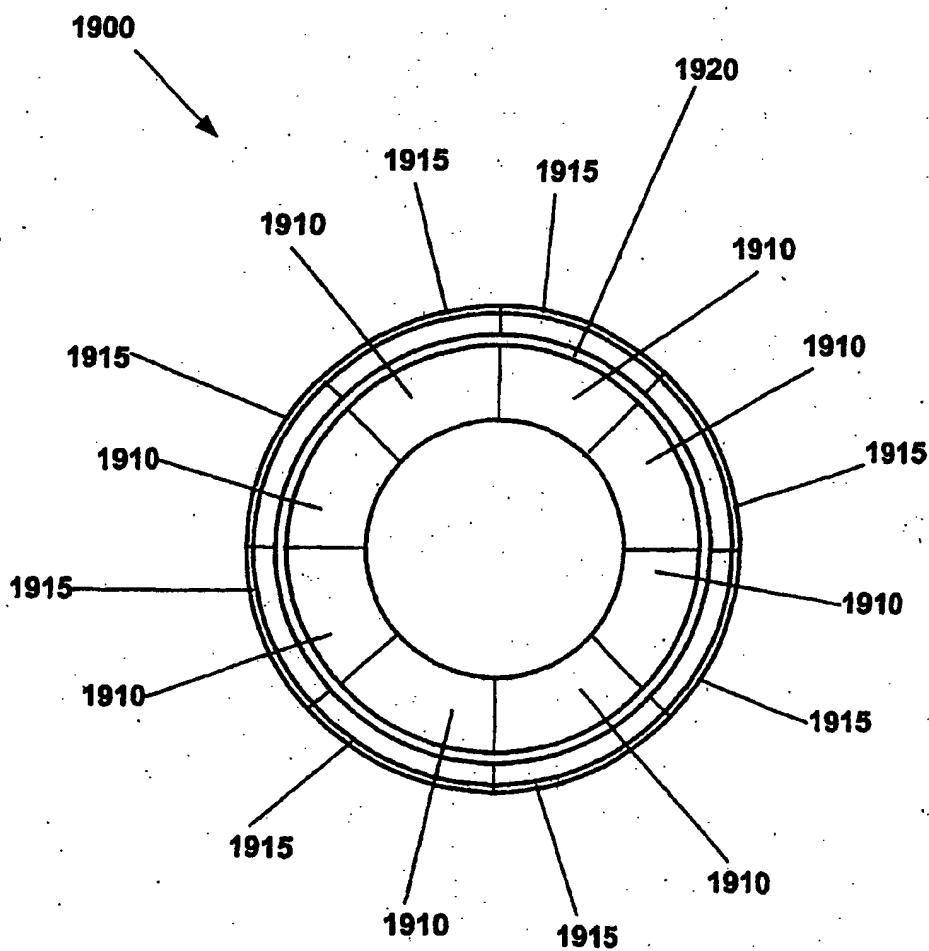


FIGURE 19c

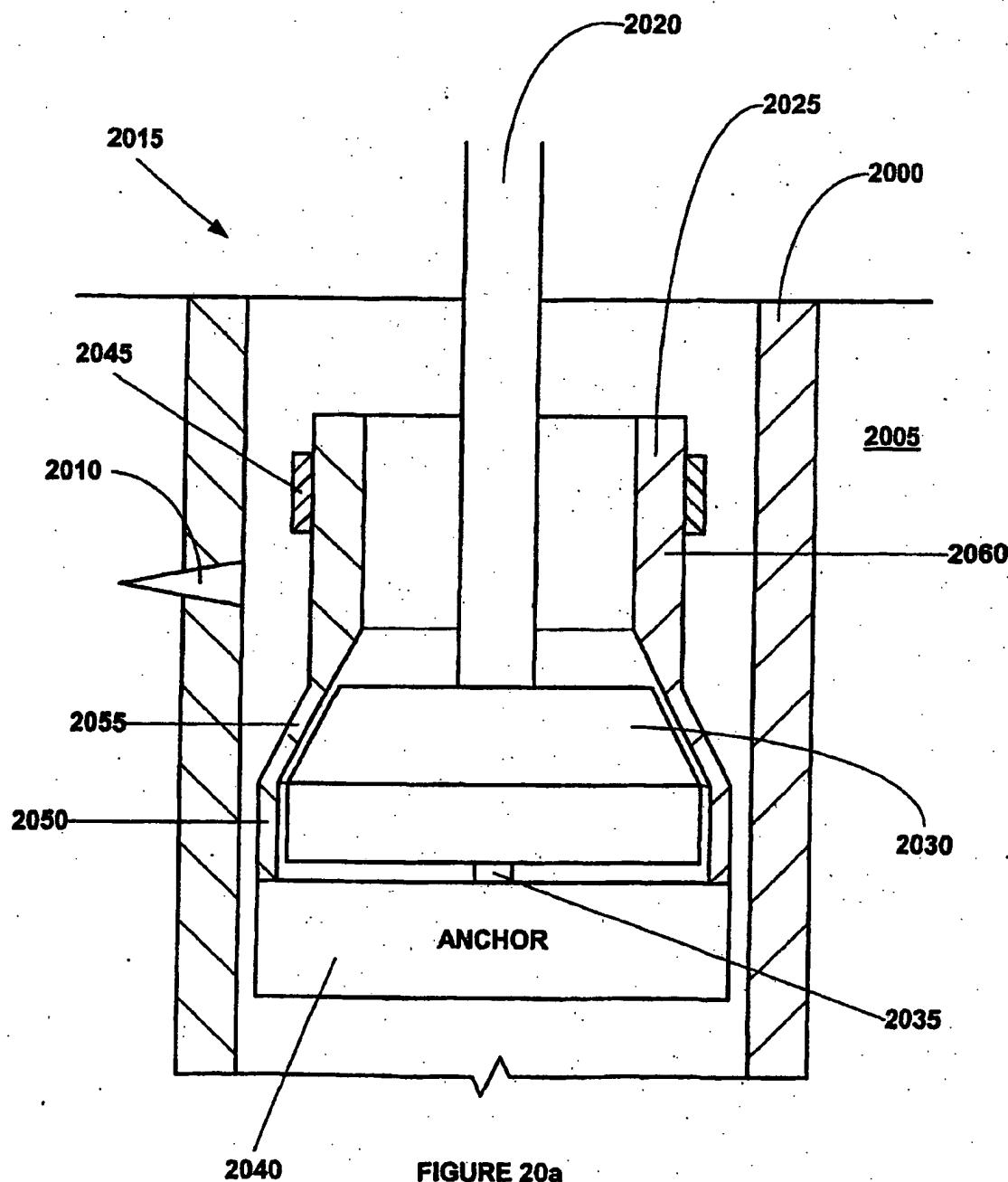


FIGURE 20a

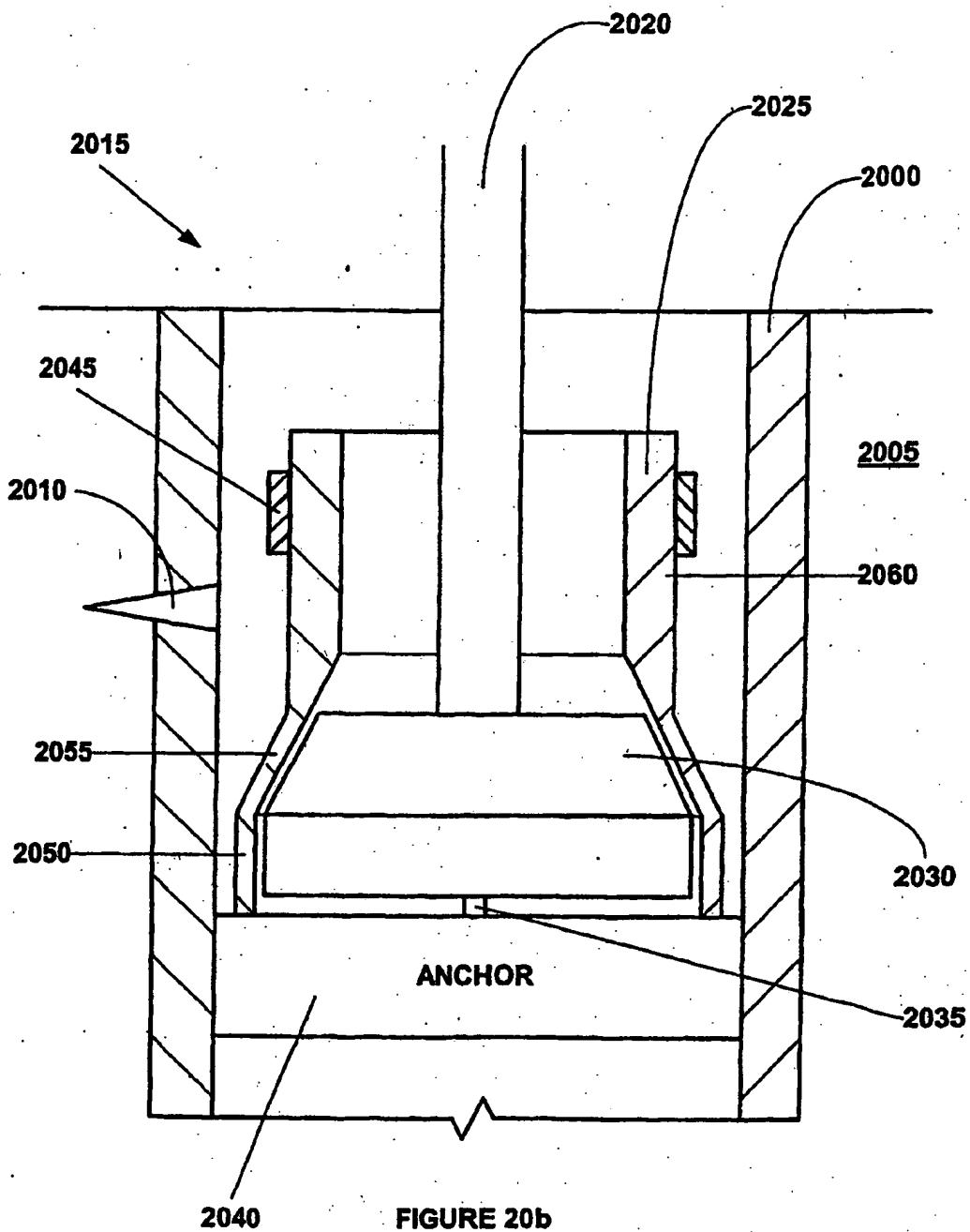


FIGURE 20b

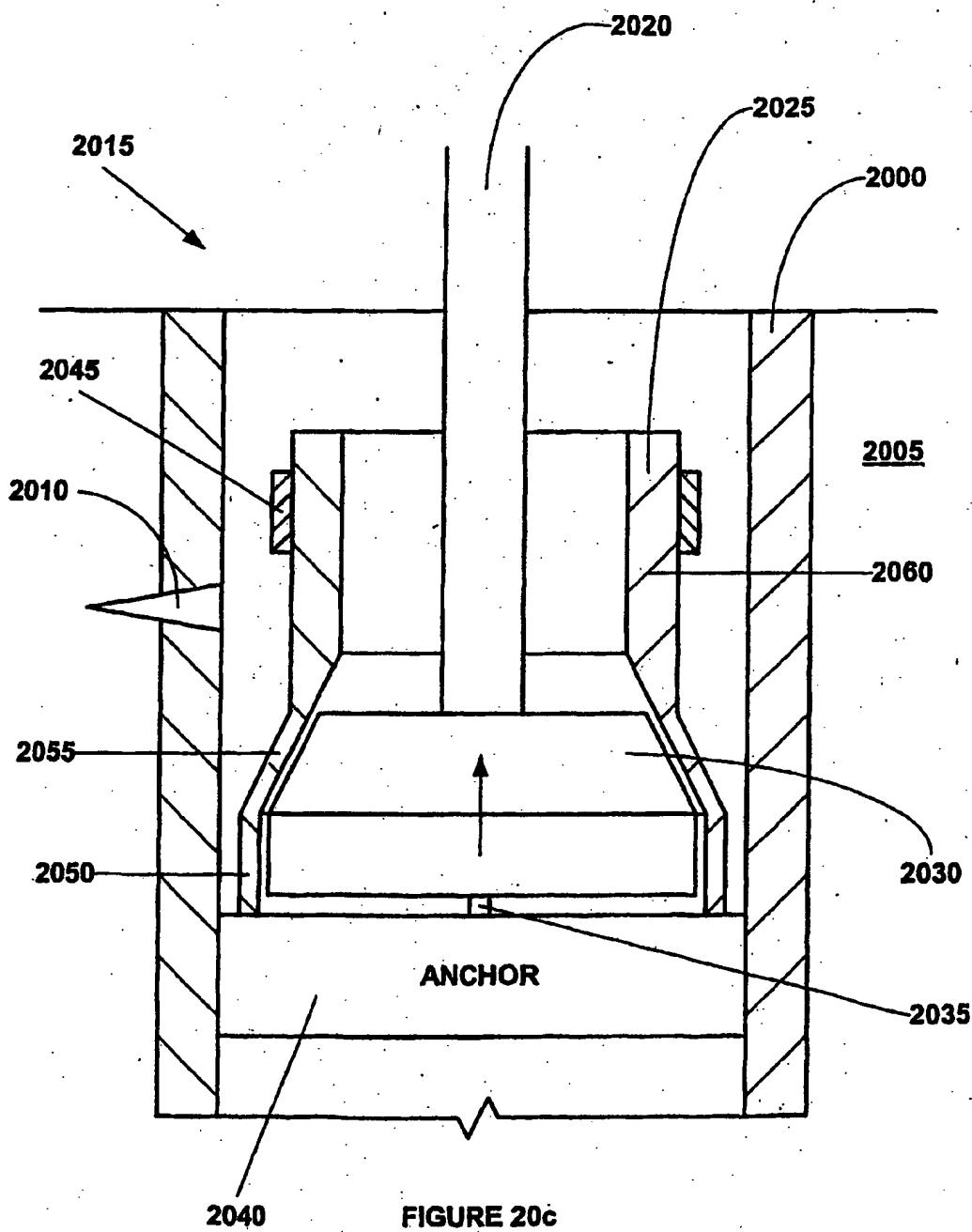


FIGURE 20c

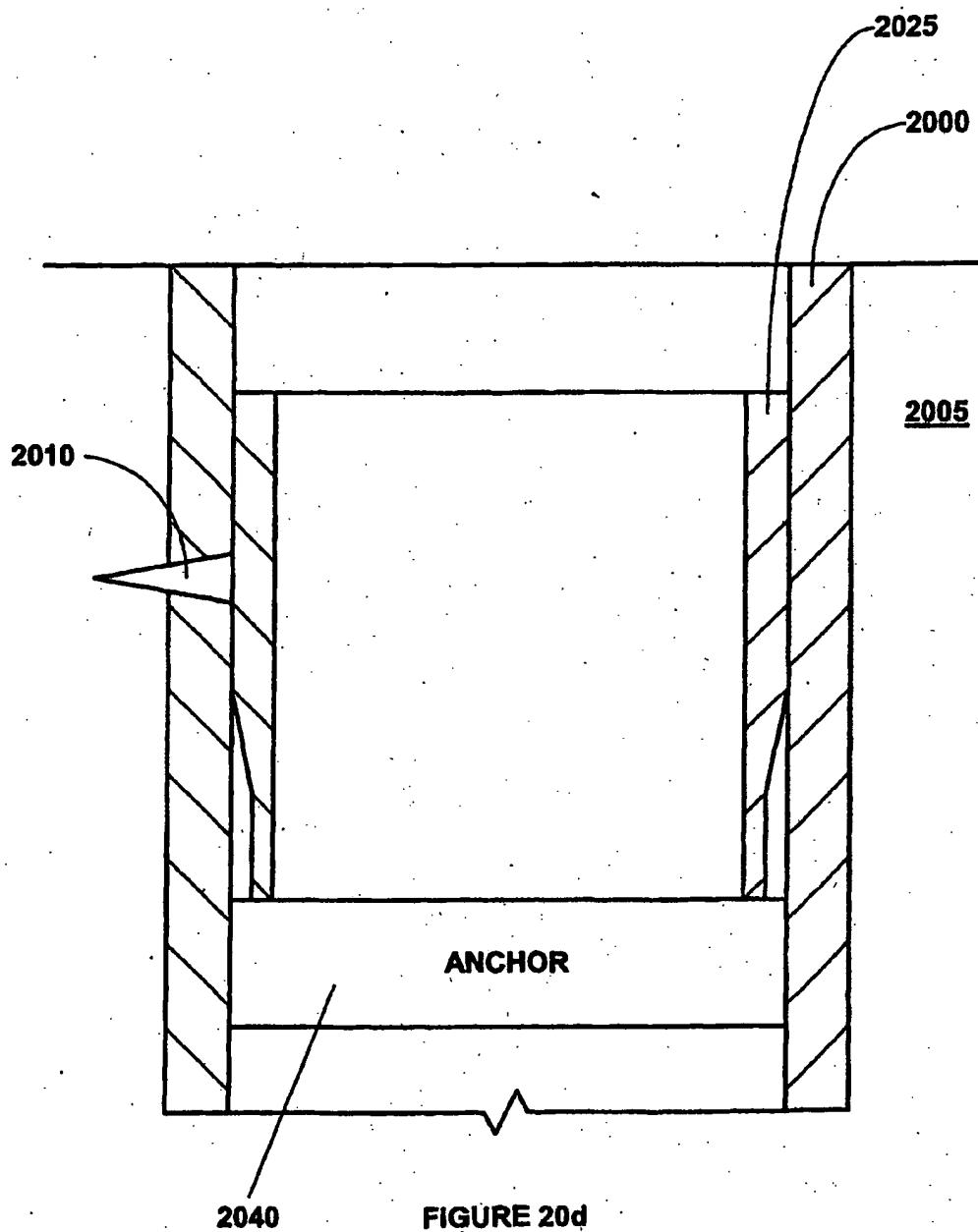


FIGURE 20d

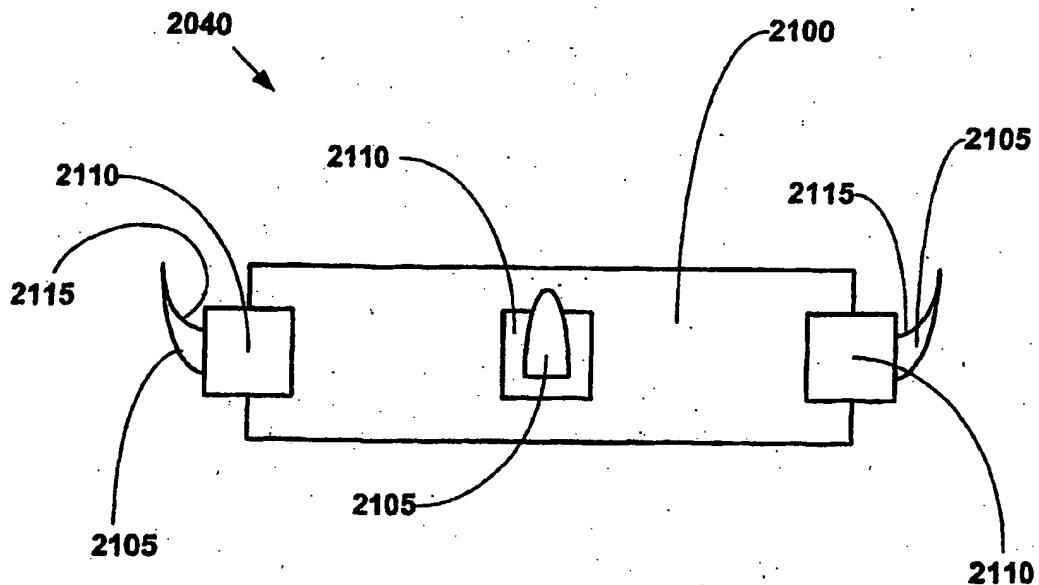


FIGURE 21a

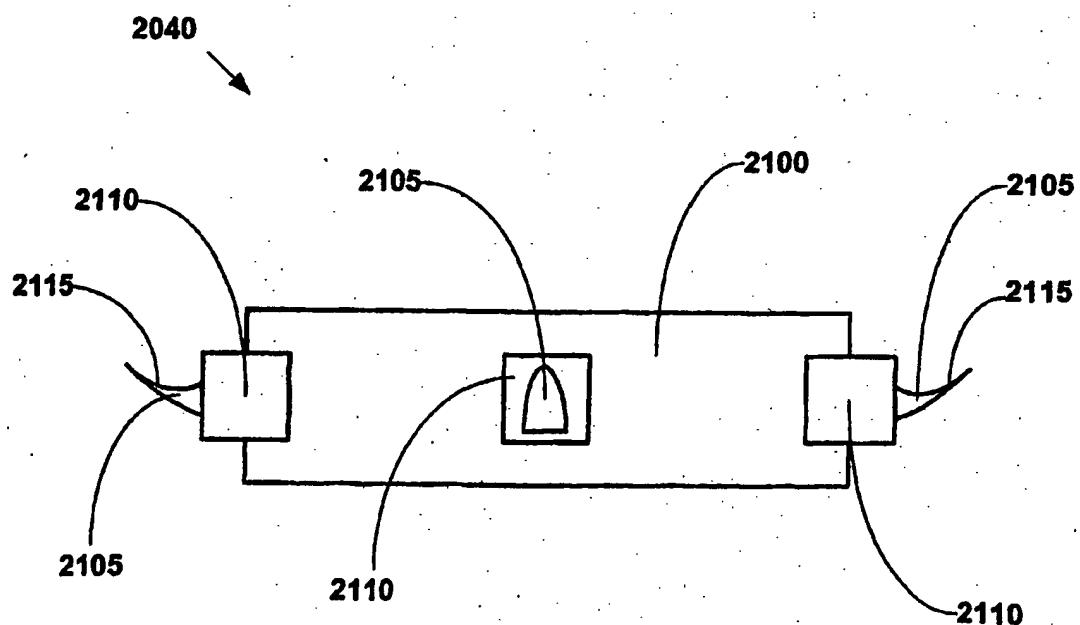


FIGURE 21b

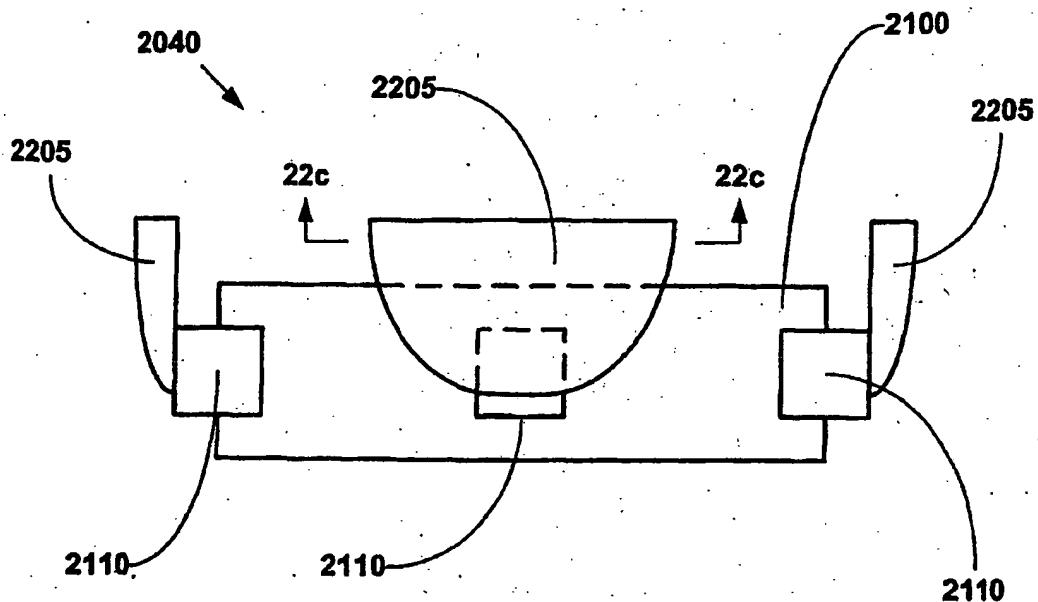


FIGURE 22a

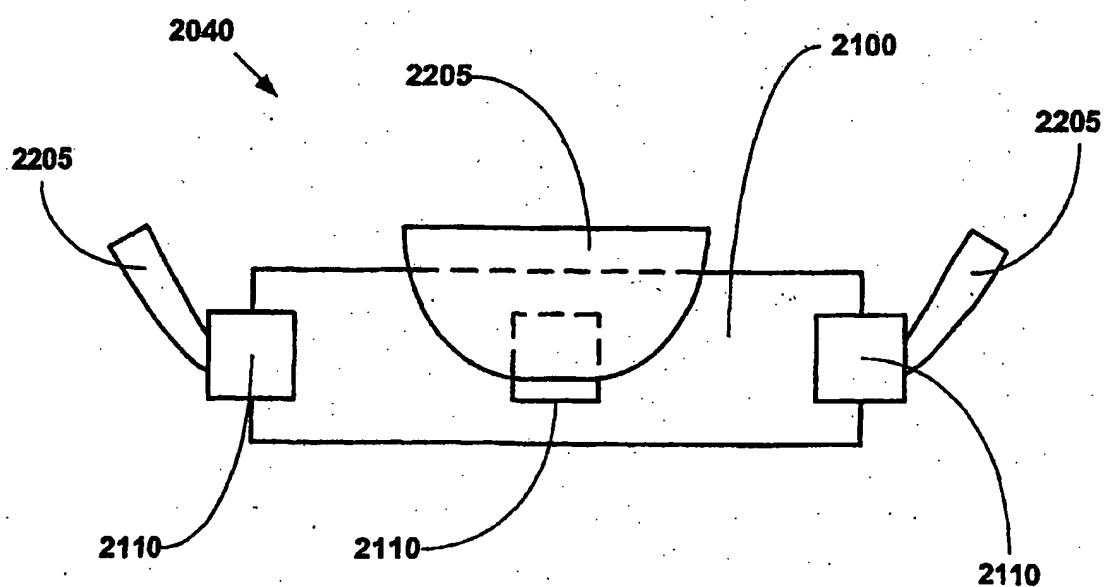
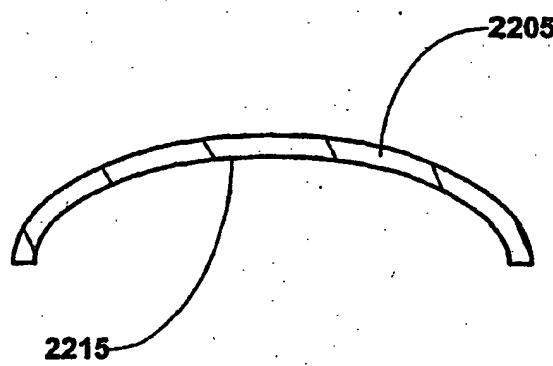


FIGURE 22b



**FIGURE 22c**

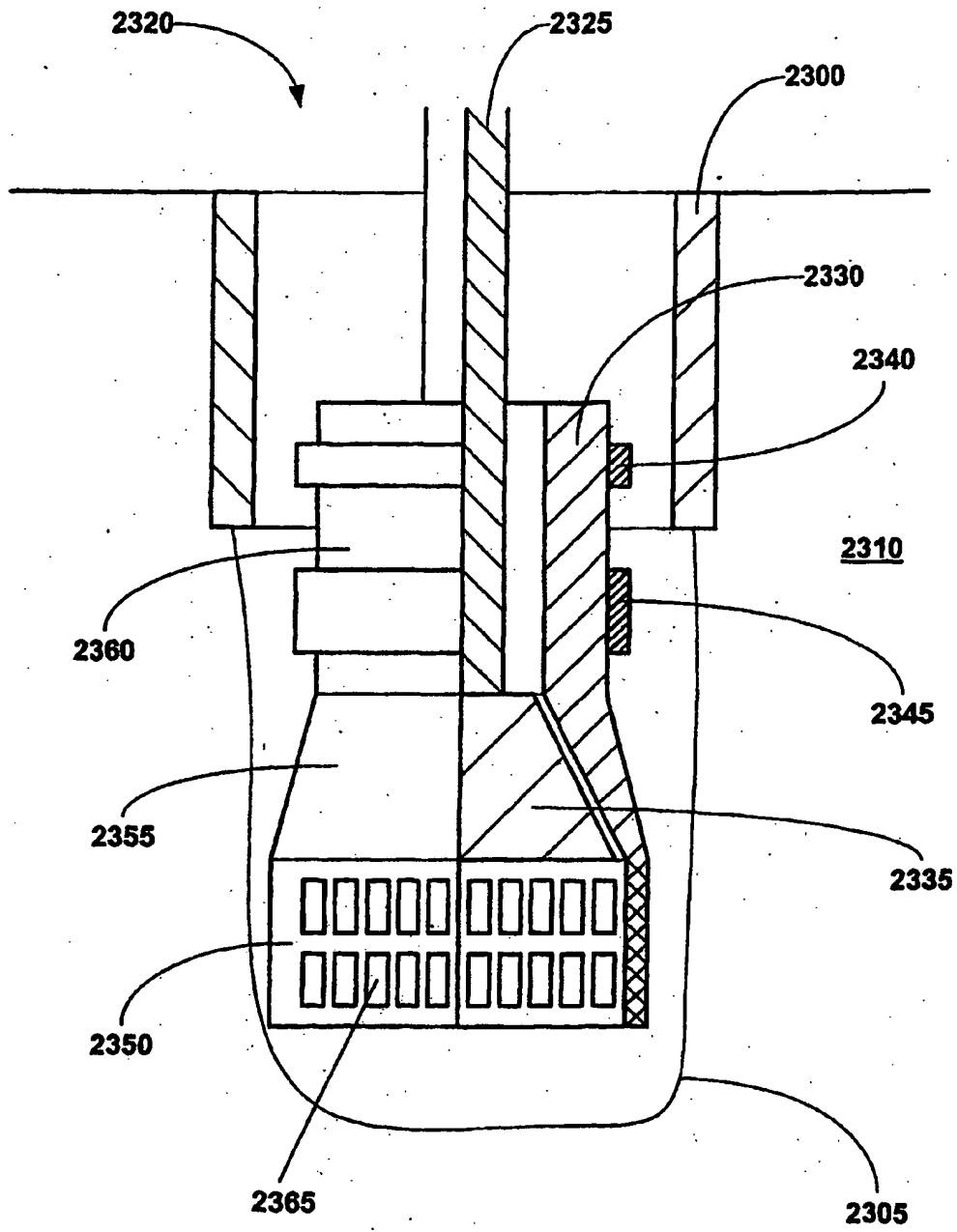


FIGURE 23a

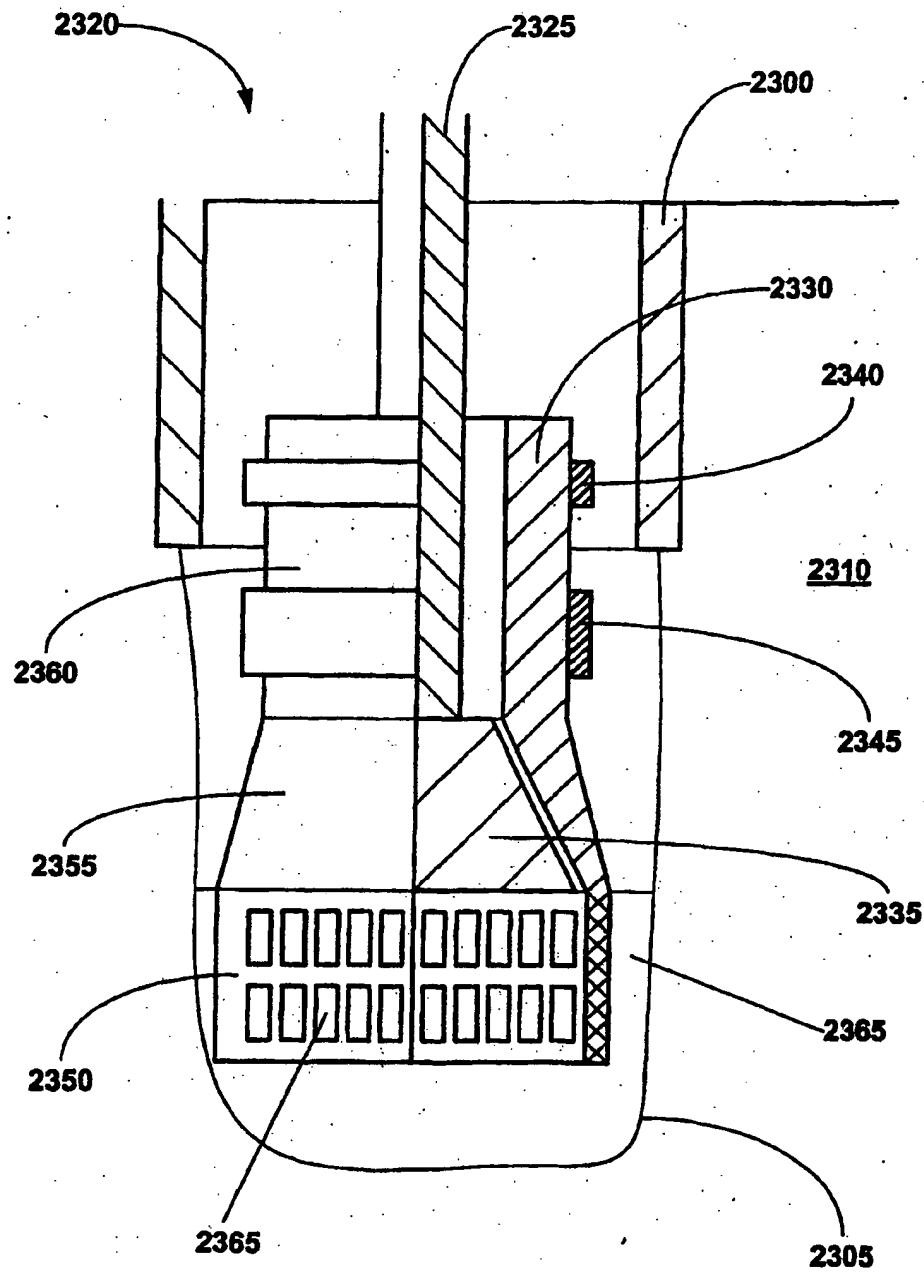


FIGURE 23b

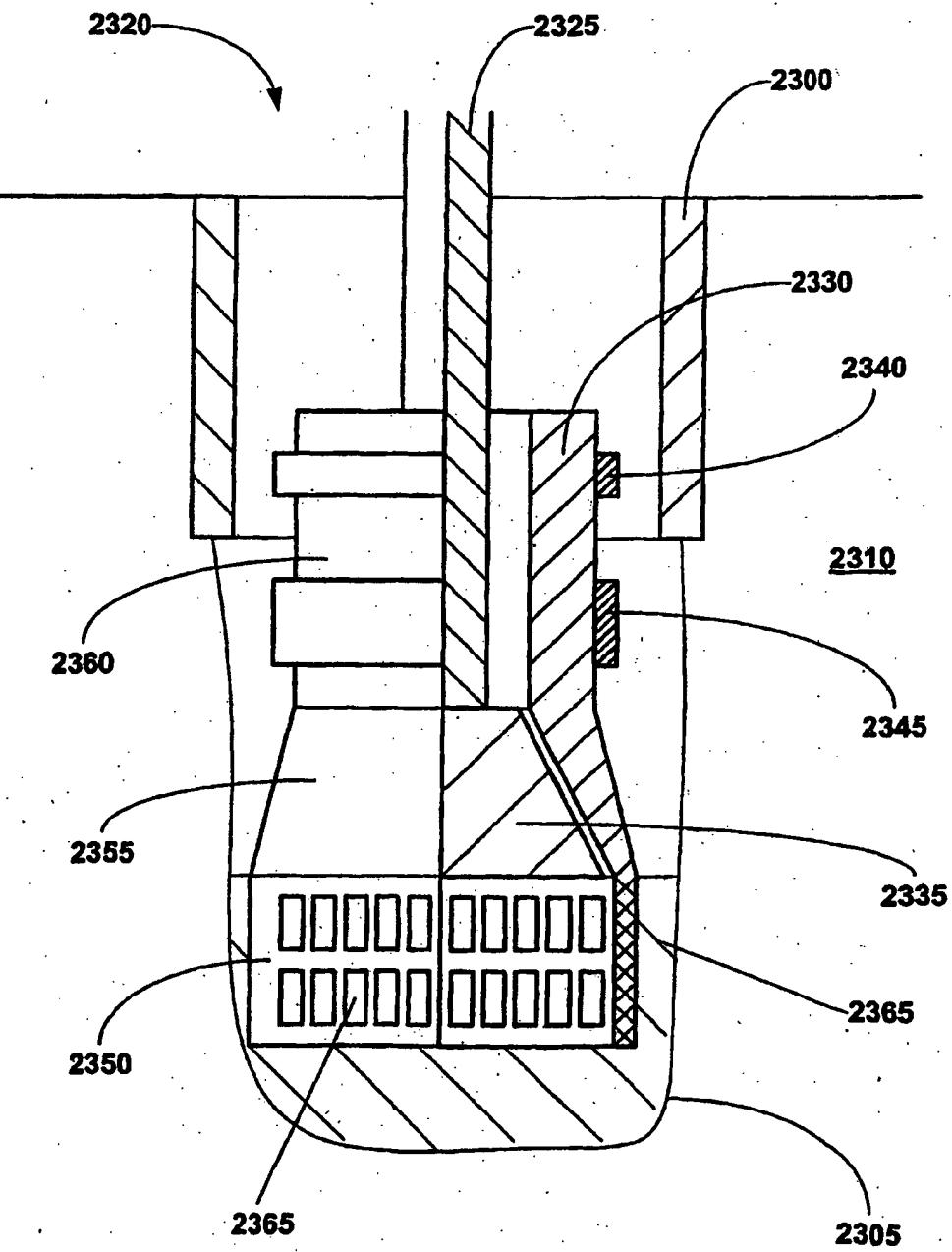


FIGURE 23c

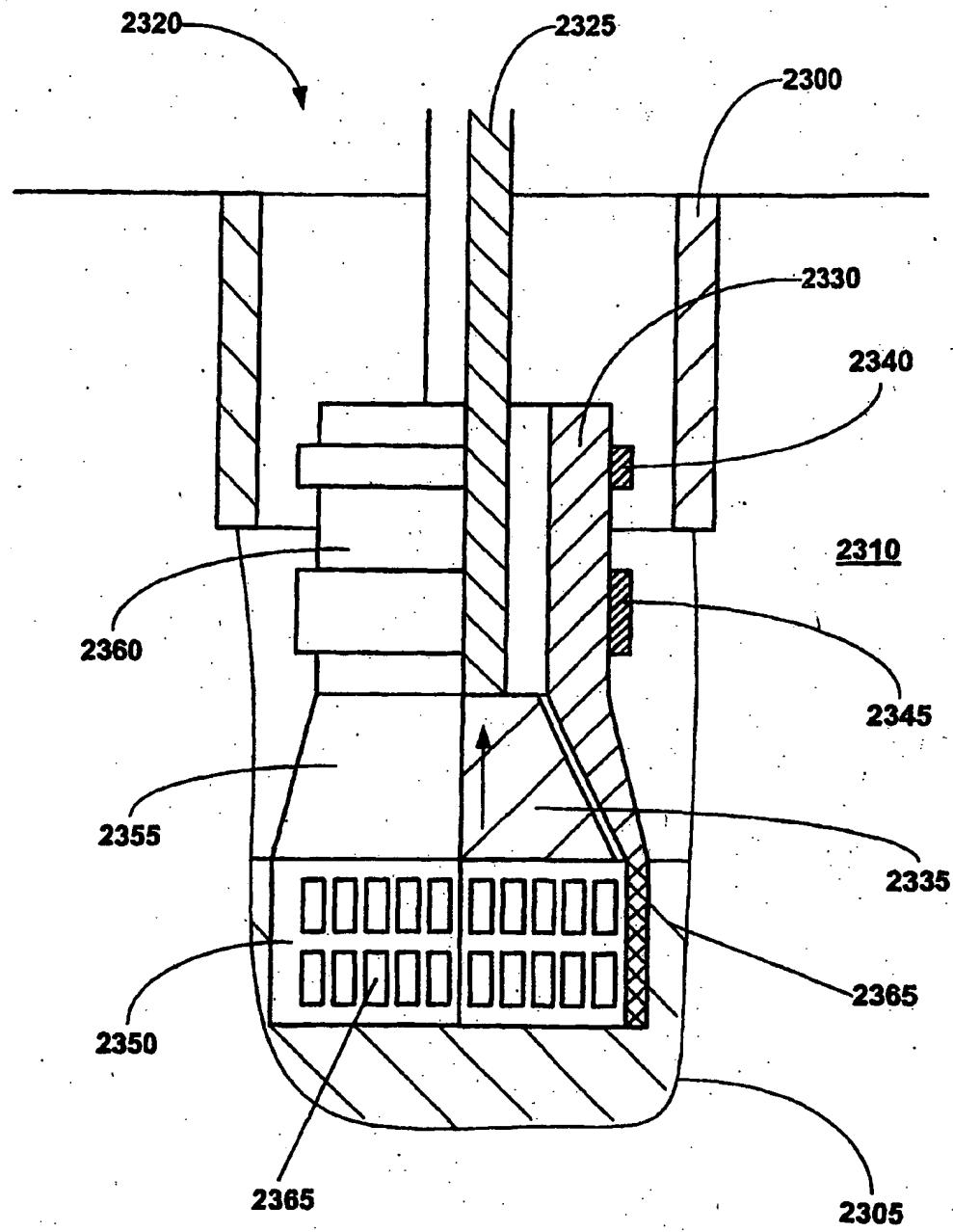


FIGURE 23d

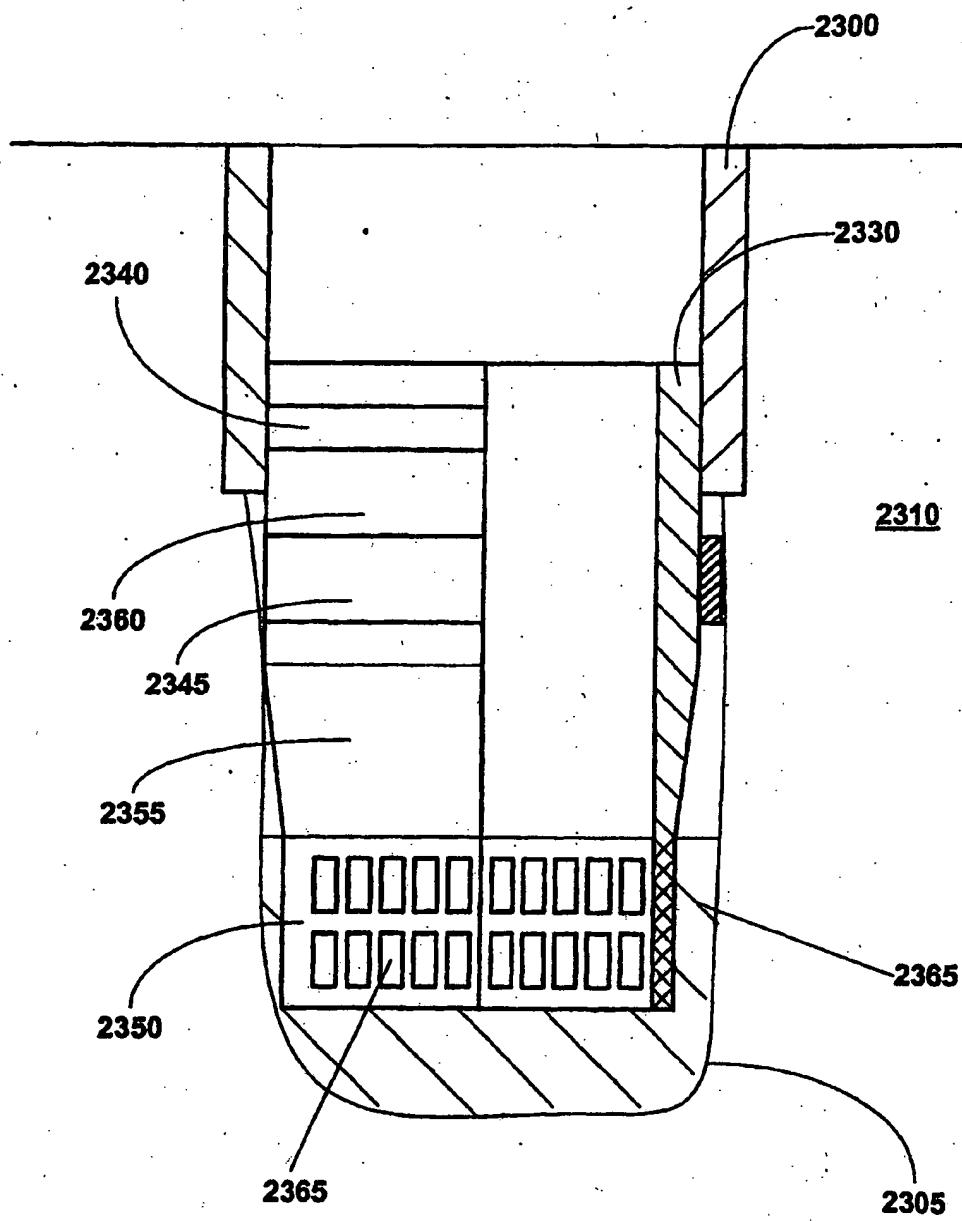


FIGURE 23e

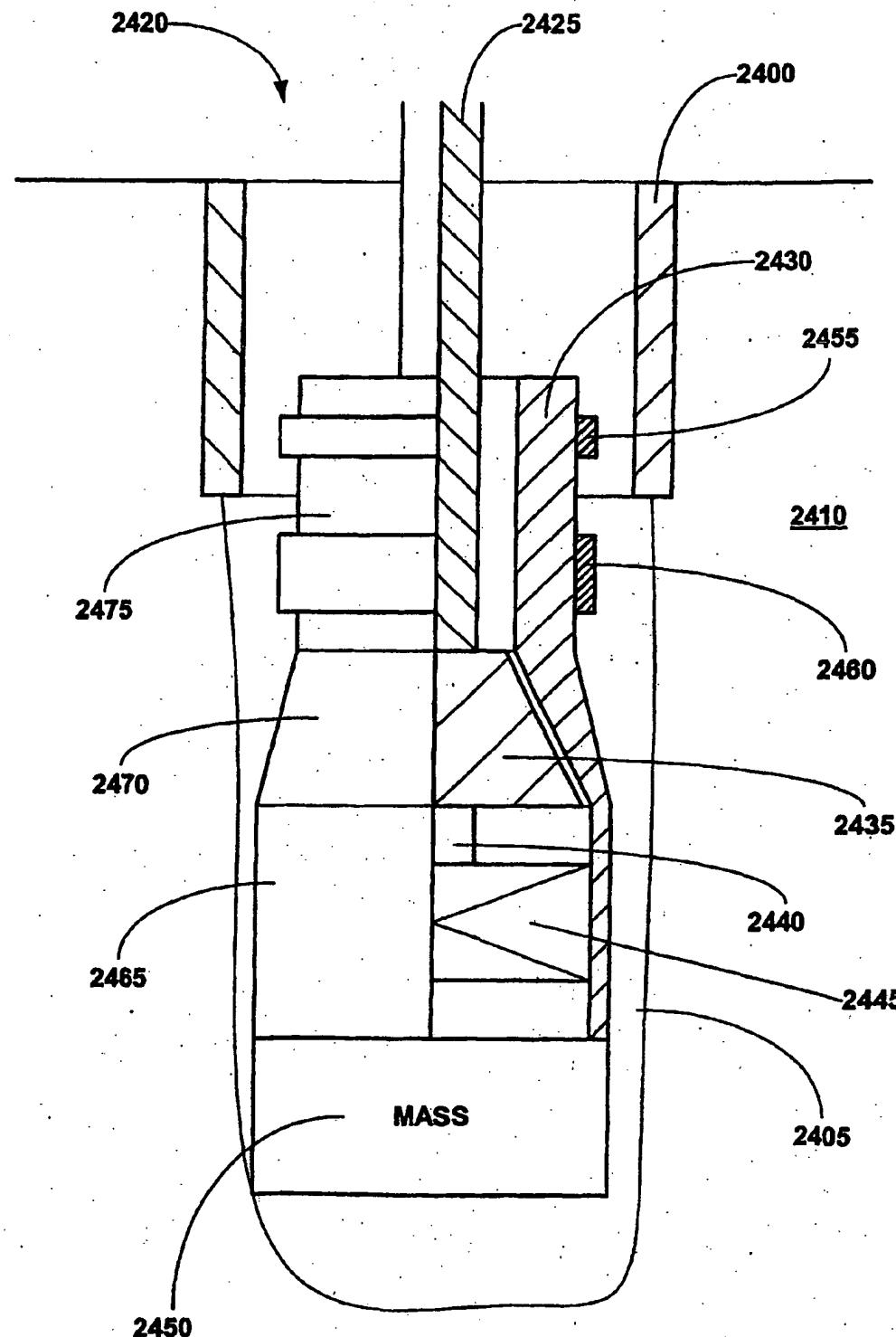
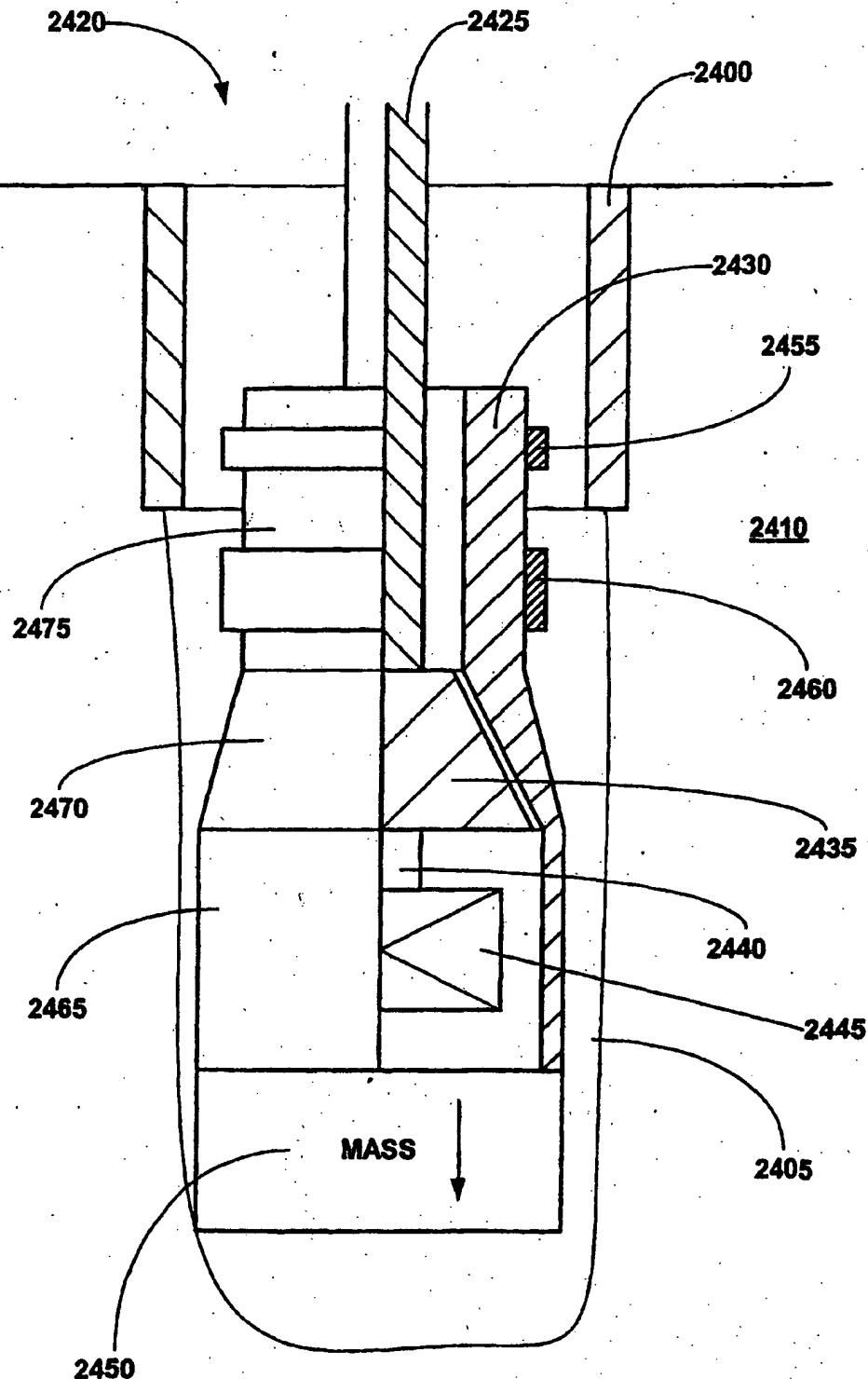


FIGURE 24a



**FIGURE 24b**

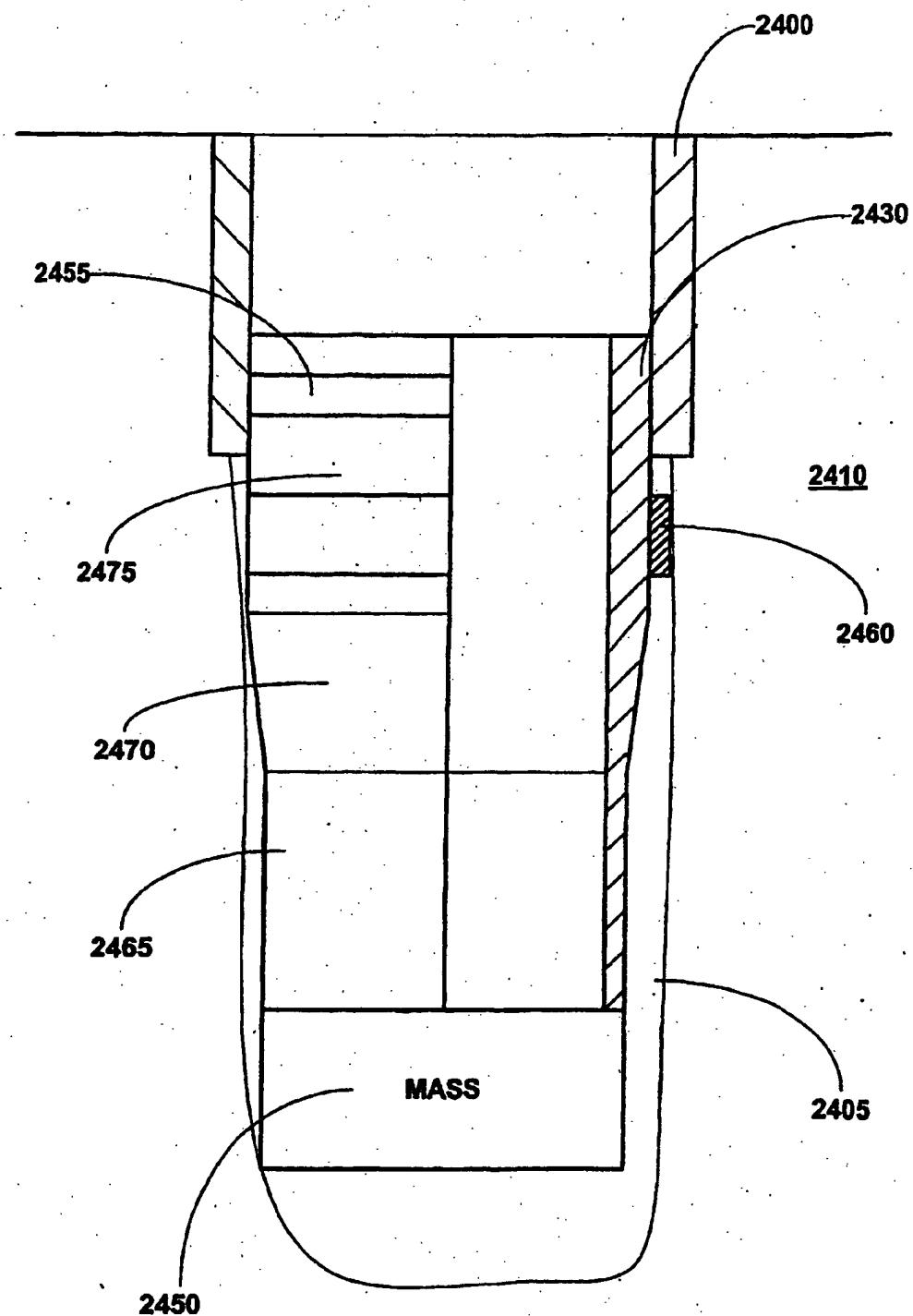


FIGURE 24c

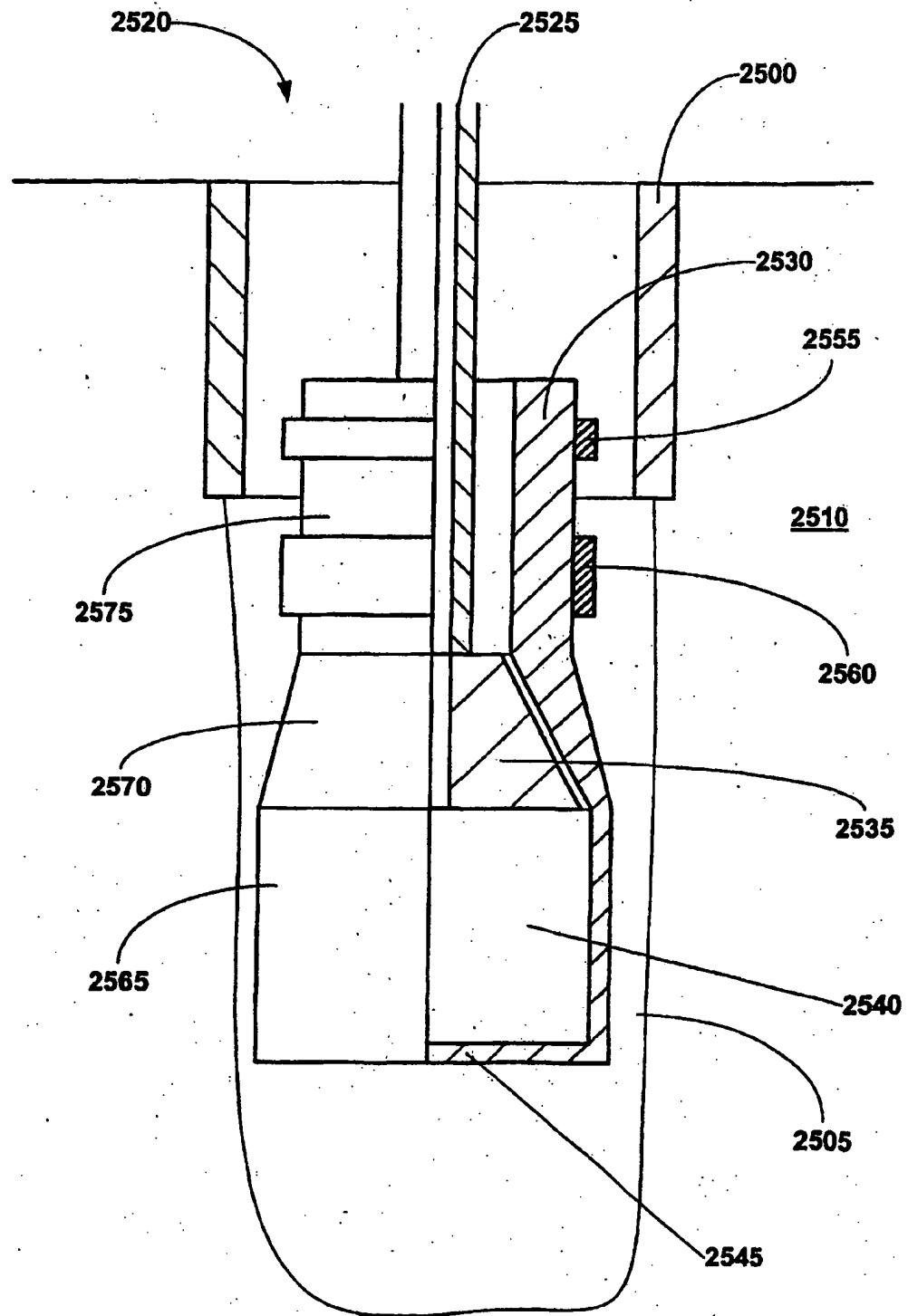


FIGURE 25a

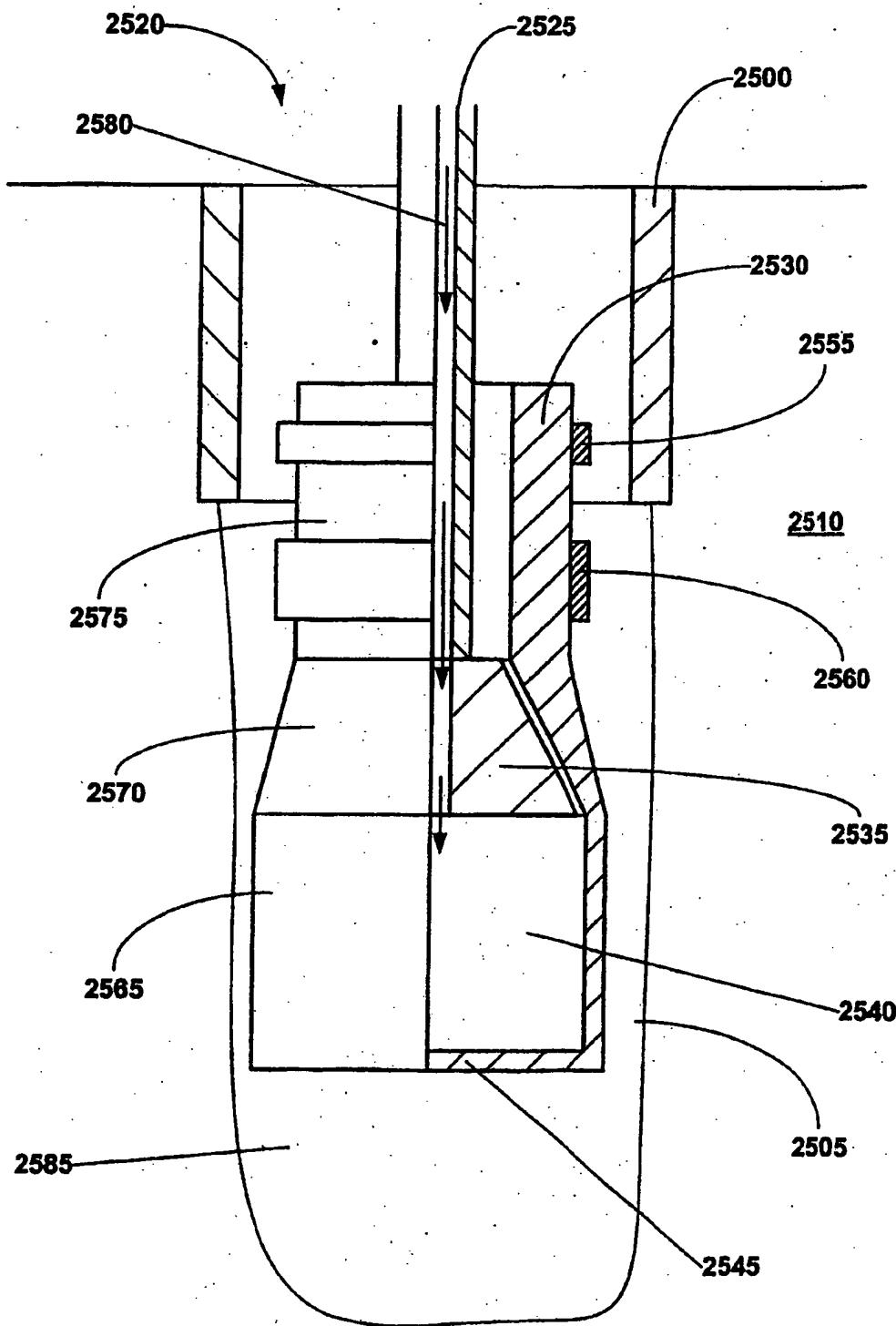


FIGURE 25b

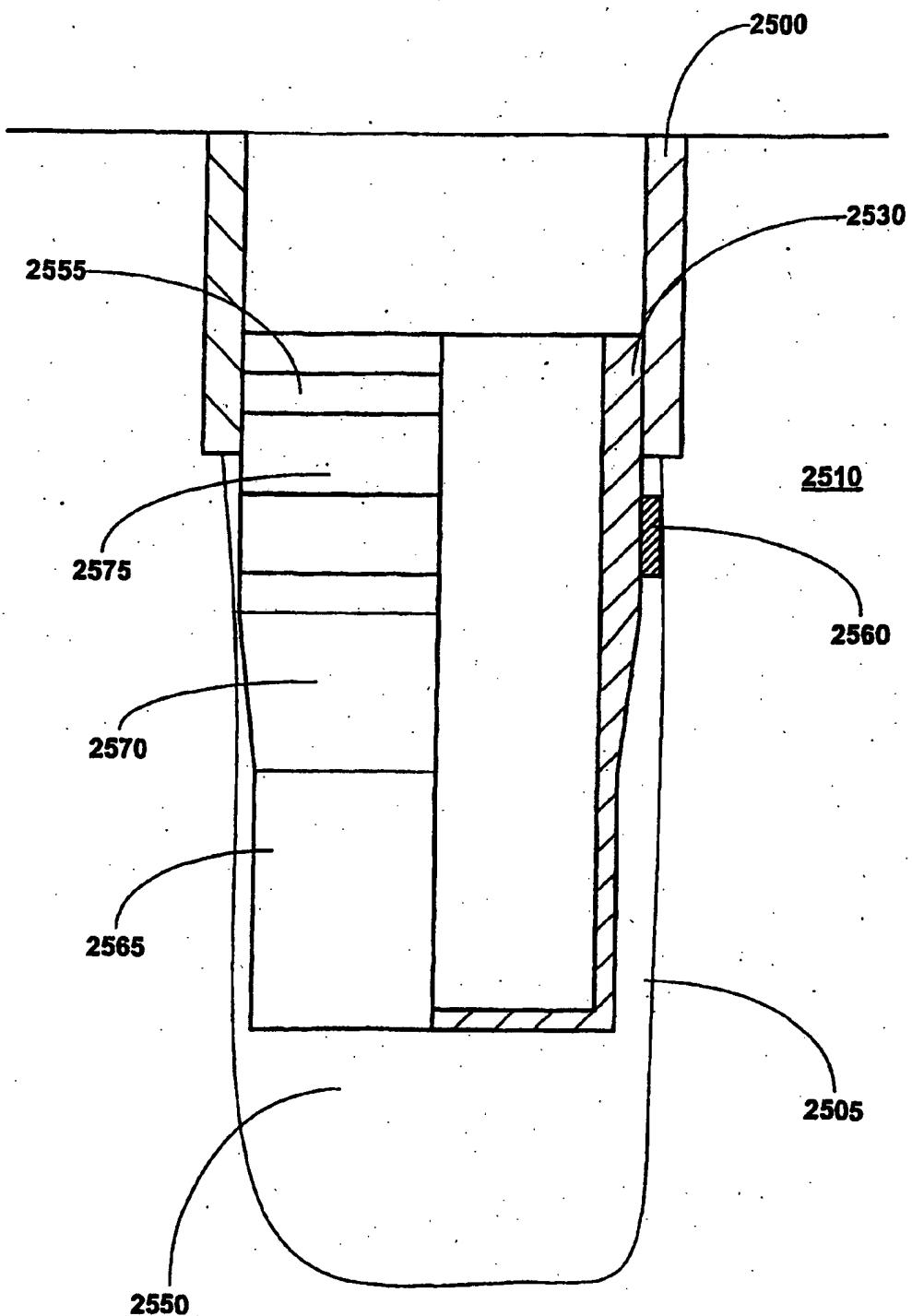


FIGURE 25c

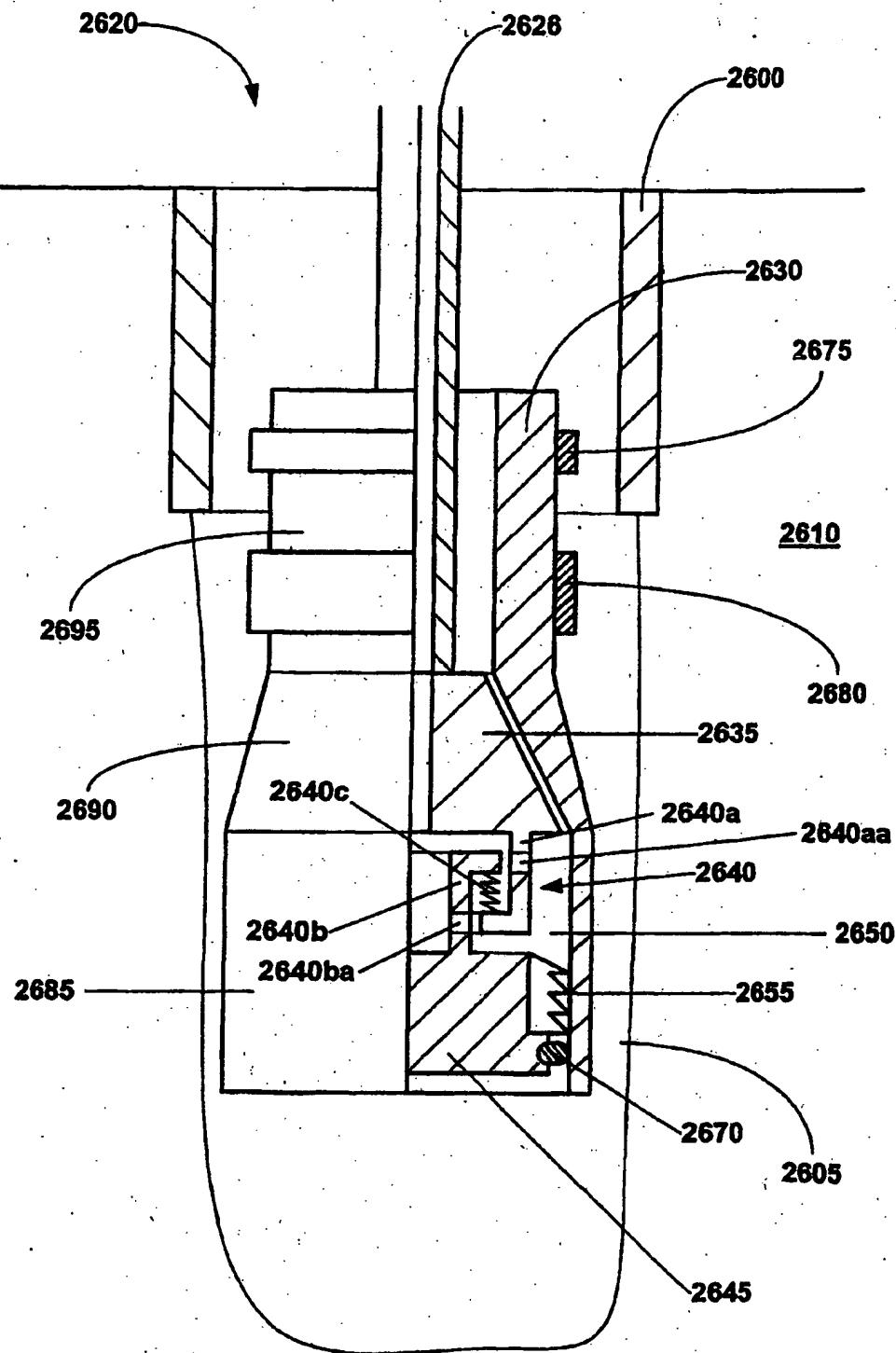


FIGURE 26a

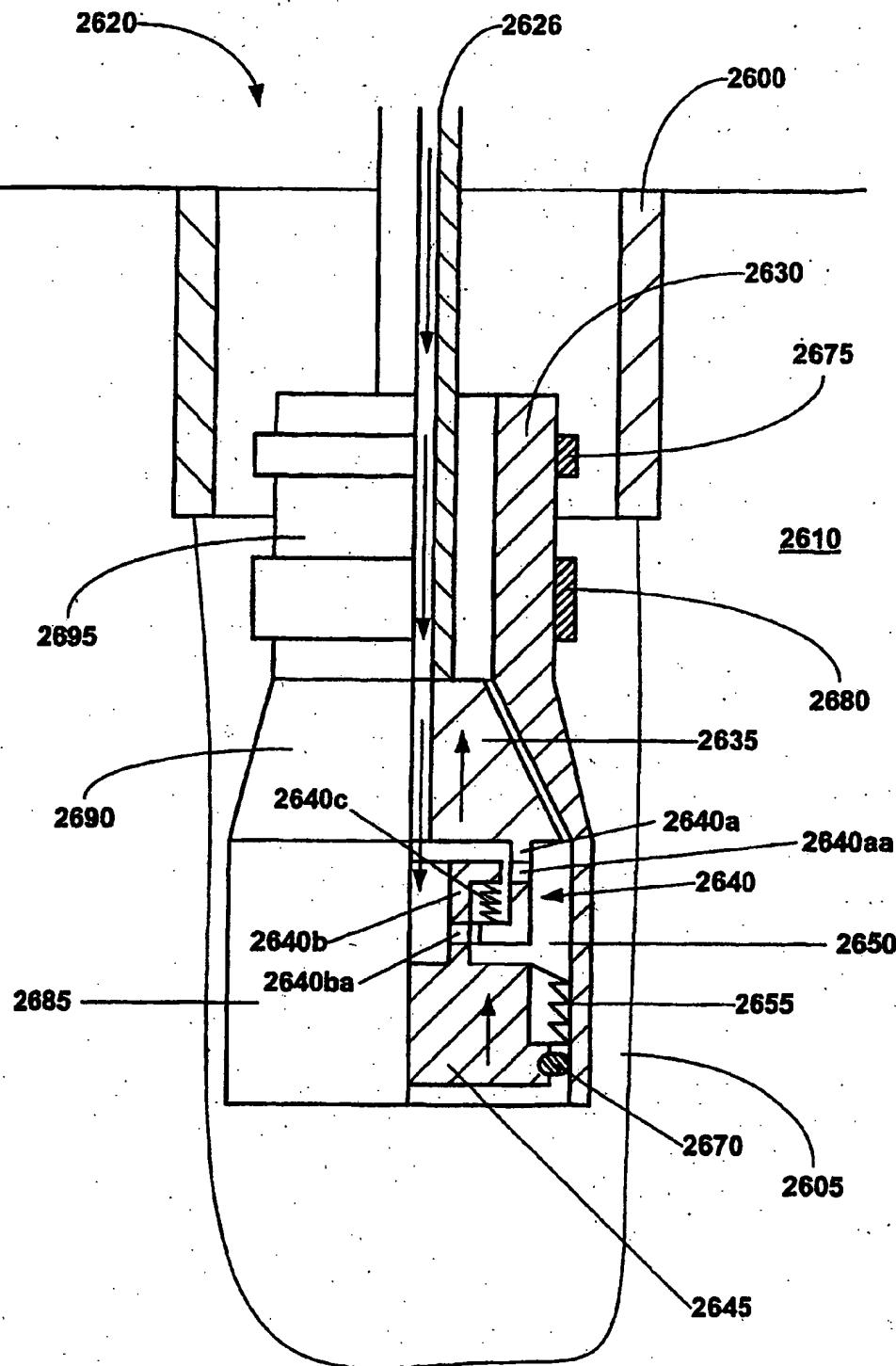


FIGURE 26b

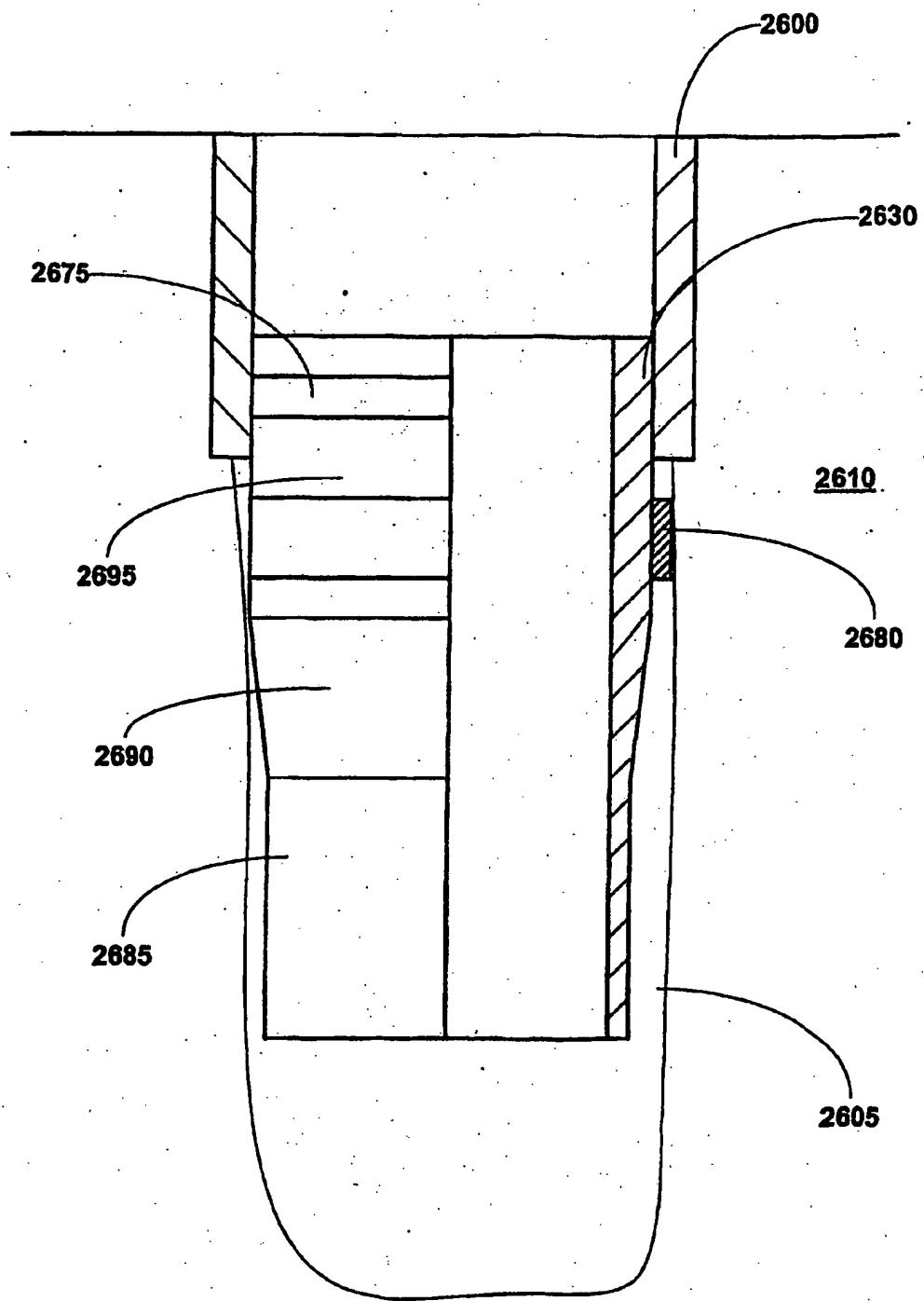


FIGURE 26c

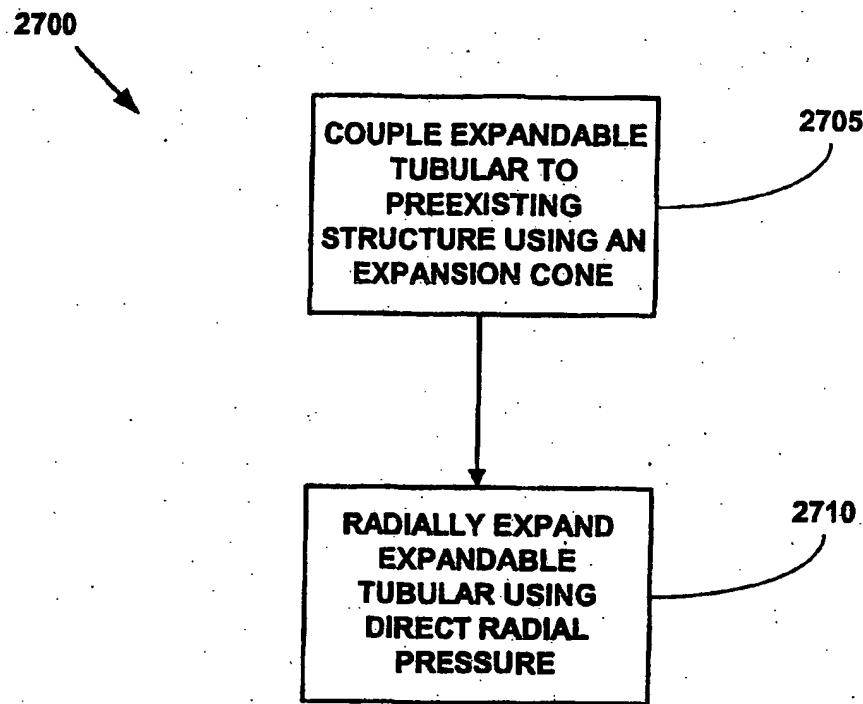
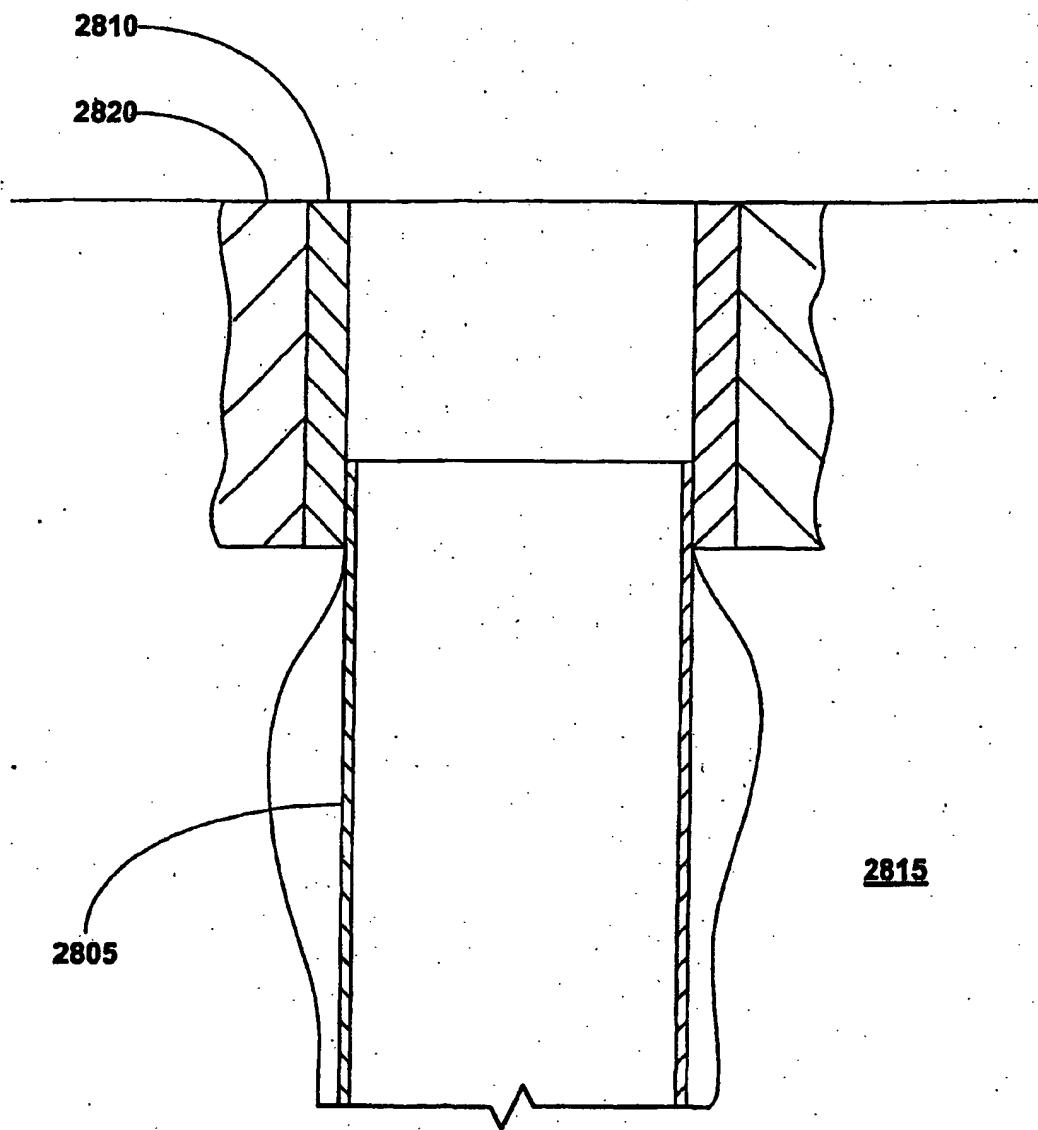
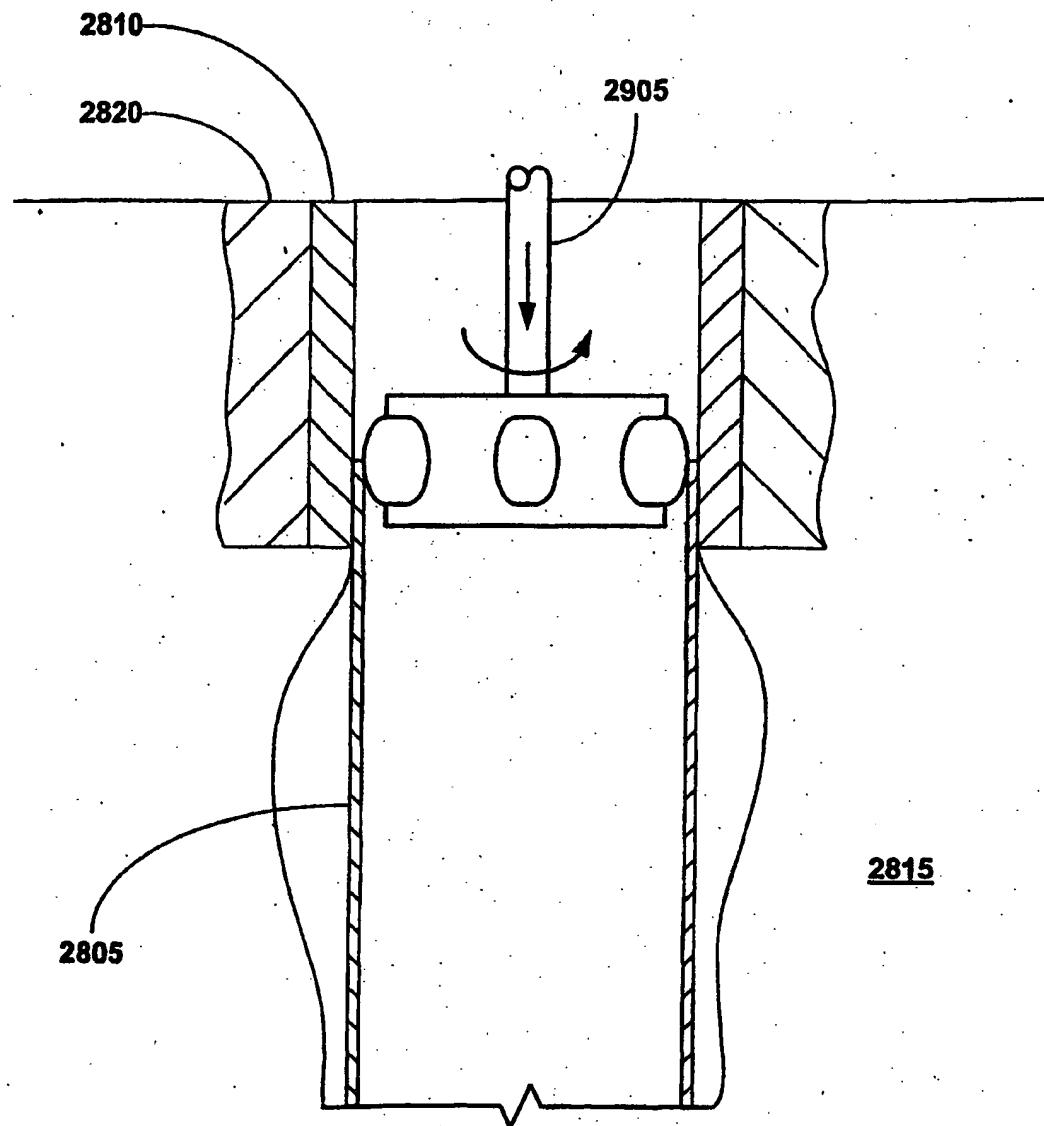


FIGURE 27



**FIGURE 28**



**FIGURE 29**

## RADIAL EXPANSION OF TUBULAR MEMBERS

## Cross Reference To Related Applications

This application claims the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial number 60/212,359, attorney docket number 25791.38, filed on 5 June 19, 2000, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference,

This application is a continuation-in-part of the following co-pending patent applications: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, 10 filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional 15 application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1999; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility 20 patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, 30 attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on 6/7/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; and (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney

docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999. Applicants incorporate by reference the disclosures of these applications.

This application is related to the following co-pending patent applications: (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed 5 on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, 10 filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999. Applicants incorporate by reference the disclosures of these applications.

#### Background of the Invention

This invention relates generally to wellbore casings, and in particular to 15. wellbore casings that are formed using expandable tubular members.

Conventionally, when a wellbore is created, a number of casings are installed in the borehole to prevent collapse of the borehole wall and to prevent undesired outflow of drilling fluid into the formation or inflow of fluid from the formation into the borehole. The borehole is drilled in intervals whereby a casing 20 which is to be installed in a lower borehole interval is lowered through a previously installed casing of an upper borehole interval. As a consequence of this procedure the casing of the lower interval is of smaller diameter than the casing of the upper interval. Thus, the casings are in a nested arrangement with casing diameters decreasing in downward direction. Cement annuli are provided between the outer 25 surfaces of the casings and the borehole wall to seal the casings from the borehole wall. As a consequence of this nested arrangement a relatively large borehole diameter is required at the upper part of the wellbore. Such a large borehole diameter involves increased costs due to heavy casing handling equipment, large drill bits and increased volumes of drilling fluid and drill cuttings. Moreover, 30 increased drilling rig time is involved due to required cement pumping, cement hardening, required equipment changes due to large variations in hole diameters drilled in the course of the well, and the large volume of cuttings drilled and removed.

The present invention is directed to overcoming one or more of the 35. limitations of the existing procedures for forming wellbores.

### Summary of the Invention

According to one aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member, and lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member. The tubular member includes: an annular member, including: a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %, a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %, imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness, no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30 %, and no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to about 25%:

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes injecting a lubricating fluid into the preexisting structure, positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: a first tubular member, a second tubular member, and a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member. The threaded connection includes: one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between the first and second tubular members.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes a plurality of tubular members having threaded portions that are coupled to one another by the process of: coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with a sealant, coupling the threaded portions of the tubular members and curing the sealant.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. The tubular member includes: a pair of rings for engaging the preexisting structure, and a sealing element positioned between the rings for sealing the interface between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. The tubular member includes one or more slots.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. The tubular member includes: a first preexpanded portion, an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element, and a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member by applying an axial force to the expansion cone. The axial force includes: a substantially constant axial force, and an increased axial force.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pushing and pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member, and injecting a curable fluidic sealing material between the tubular member and the preexisting structure prior to axially displacing the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by increasing the size of the expansion cone, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by heating a portion of the tubular member, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchoring device within the preexisting structure, positioning the anchoring device above the 5 expansion cone, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure using the anchoring device, and axially displacing the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting 10 structure, explosively anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure is provided that includes fixing the position of an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, driving the 15 expandable tubular member onto the expansion cone in a first direction, and axially displacing the expansion cone in a second direction relative to the expandable tubular member. The first and second directions are different.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes 20 placing the expandable tubular, an expansion cone, and a resilient anchor within the preexisting structure, releasing the resilient anchor, and axially displacing the expansion cone within the expandable tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes 25 placing the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchor into the preexisting structure, and anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by: pivoting one or more engagement elements, and axially displacing the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling 30 an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, placing a quantity of a fluidic material onto the expandable tubular member to anchor the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by injecting a quantity of a hardenable fluidic material into the preexisting structure, at least partially curing the hardenable fluidic sealing material, and axially displacing the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure and applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member in a downward direction.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, injecting a quantity of a first fluidic material having a first density into the region of the preexisting structure outside of the expandable tubular member, and injecting a quantity of a second fluidic material having a second density into a portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone.

The second density is greater than the first density.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, applying an axial force to the expansion cone, and pressurizing an interior portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure and applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the

expandable tubular member, including: a housing including a tapered first end and a second end, one or more grooves formed in the outer surface of the tapered first end, and one or more axial flow passages fluidically coupled to the grooves.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for

5 coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: an

10 annular member, having: a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %, a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %, imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness, no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30 %, and no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to about 25%.

15 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand

20 the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: a first tubular member, a second tubular member, and a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member, the threaded connection including: one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between the first and second tubular members.

25 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand

30 the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: a layer of a lubricant coupled to the interior surface of the tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the

35 expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone

movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: a pair of tubular members having threaded portions coupled to one another, and a quantity of a sealant within the threaded portions of the tubular members.

5 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand

10 the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: a pair of rings for engaging the preexisting structure, and a sealing element positioned between the rings for sealing the interface between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.

15 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes one or

20 more slots.

25 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member includes: a first preexpanded portion, an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element, and a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

30 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand

the expandable tubular member, and a valveable fluid passage coupled to the anchoring device.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that

5 includes a first support member, a second support member coupled to the first support member, an expansion cone coupled to the first support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, and an anchoring device coupled to the second support member adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure. The anchoring device is positioned

10 above the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a first support member, a second support member coupled to the first support member, an expansion cone coupled to the first support member, an

15 expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, and an explosive anchoring device coupled to the second support member adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that

20 includes a support member, an expandable expansion cone coupled to the support member, and an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member, an expandable expansion cone coupled to the support

25 member, and an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an

30 expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone including one or more shape memory metal inserts, and a heater coupled to the support member in opposing relation to the shape memory metal inserts.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that

35 includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an

expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone, and a resilient anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an expandable tubular member is provided that includes: an expandable tubular body, one or more resilient

5 panels coupled to the expandable tubular body, and a release member releasably coupled to the resilient panels adapted to controllably release the resilient panels.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an

10 expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone, and an anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member, including: one or more spikes pivotally coupled to the expandable tubular member for engaging the preexisting structure.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for 15 coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone, and an anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member, including: one or more petal baskets pivotally coupled to the expandable tubular member.

20 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, including: a slotted portion provided at one end of the expandable tubular member.

25 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member, an expansion cone, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, a coupling device coupled to the support member and an end portion of the expandable tubular member, and

30 a mass coupled to the end portion of the expandable tubular member. The weight of the mass is greater than the yield strength of the expandable tubular member.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus for 35 coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes a support member including a fluid passage, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion

cone, a slip joint coupled to the expansion cone, an end plate coupled to the slip joint, a fluid chamber coupled to the fluid passage, the fluid chamber defined by the interior portion of the expandable tubular member between the expansion cone and the end plate.

- 5 According to another aspect of the present invention, a method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure is provided that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone, removing the expansion cone, and applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member.
- 10 According to another aspect of the present invention, an apparatus is provided that includes a tubular member coupled to a preexisting structure. The tubular member is coupled to the preexisting structure by the process of: positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone, removing the expansion cone, and
- 15 applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member.

#### Brief Description of the Drawings

FIG. 1a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the placement of an embodiment of an apparatus for expanding a tubular member within a wellbore casing.

20 FIG. 1b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 1a after anchoring the expandable tubular member of the apparatus to the wellbore casing.

FIG. 1c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 1b after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

25 FIG. 1d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 1b after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone by pulling on the expansion cone and injecting a pressurized fluid below the expansion cone.

FIG. 1e is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIGS. 1c and 1d after the completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

30 FIG. 1f is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 1e after the decoupling of the anchoring device of the apparatus from the wellbore casing.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100  
101  
102  
103  
104  
105  
106  
107  
108  
109  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129  
130  
131  
132  
133  
134  
135  
136  
137  
138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185  
186  
187  
188  
189  
190  
191  
192  
193  
194  
195  
196  
197  
198  
199  
200  
201  
202  
203  
204  
205  
206  
207  
208  
209  
210  
211  
212  
213  
214  
215  
216  
217  
218  
219  
220  
221  
222  
223  
224  
225  
226  
227  
228  
229  
230  
231  
232  
233  
234  
235  
236  
237  
238  
239  
240  
241  
242  
243  
244  
245  
246  
247  
248  
249  
250  
251  
252  
253  
254  
255  
256  
257  
258  
259  
259  
260  
261  
262  
263  
264  
265  
266  
267  
268  
269  
270  
271  
272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281  
282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289  
289  
290  
291  
292  
293  
294  
295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302  
303  
304  
305  
306  
307  
308  
309  
310  
311  
312  
313  
314  
315  
316  
317  
318  
319  
320  
321  
322  
323  
324  
325  
326  
327  
328  
329  
330  
331  
332  
333  
334  
335  
336  
337  
338  
339  
339  
340  
341  
342  
343  
344  
345  
346  
347  
348  
349  
349  
350  
351  
352  
353  
354  
355  
356  
357  
358  
359  
359  
360  
361  
362  
363  
364  
365  
366  
367  
368  
369  
369  
370  
371  
372  
373  
374  
375  
376  
377  
378  
379  
379  
380  
381  
382  
383  
384  
385  
386  
387  
388  
389  
389  
390  
391  
392  
393  
394  
395  
396  
397  
398  
399  
399  
400  
401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406  
407  
408  
409  
409  
410  
411  
412  
413  
414  
415  
416  
417  
418  
419  
419  
420  
421  
422  
423  
424  
425  
426  
427  
428  
429  
429  
430  
431  
432  
433  
434  
435  
436  
437  
438  
439  
439  
440  
441  
442  
443  
444  
445  
446  
447  
448  
449  
449  
450  
451  
452  
453  
454  
455  
456  
457  
458  
459  
459  
460  
461  
462  
463  
464  
465  
466  
467  
468  
469  
469  
470  
471  
472  
473  
474  
475  
476  
477  
478  
479  
479  
480  
481  
482  
483  
484  
485  
486  
487  
488  
489  
489  
490  
491  
492  
493  
494  
495  
496  
497  
498  
499  
500  
501  
502  
503  
504  
505  
506  
507  
508  
509  
509  
510  
511  
512  
513  
514  
515  
516  
517  
518  
519  
519  
520  
521  
522  
523  
524  
525  
526  
527  
528  
529  
529  
530  
531  
532  
533  
534  
535  
536  
537  
538  
539  
539  
540  
541  
542  
543  
544  
545  
546  
547  
548  
549  
549  
550  
551  
552  
553  
554  
555  
556  
557  
558  
559  
559  
560  
561  
562  
563  
564  
565  
566  
567  
568  
569  
569  
570  
571  
572  
573  
574  
575  
576  
577  
578  
579  
579  
580  
581  
582  
583  
584  
585  
586  
587  
588  
589  
589  
590  
591  
592  
593  
594  
595  
596  
597  
598  
599  
599  
600  
601  
602  
603  
604  
605  
606  
607  
608  
609  
609  
610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617  
618  
619  
619  
620  
621  
622  
623  
624  
625  
626  
627  
628  
629  
629  
630  
631  
632  
633  
634  
635  
636  
637  
638  
639  
639  
640  
641  
642  
643  
644  
645  
646  
647  
648  
649  
649  
650  
651  
652  
653  
654  
655  
656  
657  
658  
659  
659  
660  
661  
662  
663  
664  
665  
666  
667  
668  
669  
669  
670  
671  
672  
673  
674  
675  
676  
677  
678  
679  
679  
680  
681  
682  
683  
684  
685  
686  
687  
688  
689  
689  
690  
691  
692  
693  
694  
695  
696  
697  
698  
699  
699  
700  
701  
702  
703  
704  
705  
706  
707  
708  
709  
709  
710  
711  
712  
713  
714  
715  
716  
717  
718  
719  
719  
720  
721  
722  
723  
724  
725  
726  
727  
728  
729  
729  
730  
731  
732  
733  
734  
735  
736  
737  
738  
739  
739  
740  
741  
742  
743  
744  
745  
746  
747  
748  
749  
749  
750  
751  
752  
753  
754  
755  
756  
757  
758  
759  
759  
760  
761  
762  
763  
764  
765  
766  
767  
768  
769  
769  
770  
771  
772  
773  
774  
775  
776  
777  
778  
779  
779  
780  
781  
782  
783  
784  
785  
786  
787  
788  
789  
789  
790  
791  
792  
793  
794  
795  
796  
797  
798  
799  
799  
800  
801  
802  
803  
804  
805  
806  
807  
808  
809  
809  
810  
811  
812  
813  
814  
815  
816  
817  
818  
819  
819  
820  
821  
822  
823  
824  
825  
826  
827  
828  
829  
829  
830  
831  
832  
833  
834  
835  
836  
837  
838  
839  
839  
840  
841  
842  
843  
844  
845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867  
868  
869  
869  
870  
871  
872  
873  
874  
875  
876  
877  
878  
879  
879  
880  
881  
882  
883  
884  
885  
886  
887  
888  
889  
889  
890  
891  
892  
893  
894  
895  
896  
897  
898  
899  
899  
900  
901  
902  
903  
904  
905  
906  
907  
908  
909  
909  
910  
911  
912  
913  
914  
915  
916  
917  
918  
919  
919  
920  
921  
922  
923  
924  
925  
926  
927  
928  
929  
929  
930  
931  
932  
933  
934  
935  
936  
937  
938  
939  
939  
940  
941  
942  
943  
944  
945  
946  
947  
948  
949  
949  
950  
951  
952  
953  
954  
955  
956  
957  
958  
959  
959  
960  
961  
962  
963  
964  
965  
966  
967  
968  
969  
969  
970  
971  
972  
973  
974  
975  
976  
977  
978  
979  
979  
980  
981  
982  
983  
984  
985  
986  
987  
988  
989  
989  
990  
991  
992  
993  
994  
995  
996  
997  
998  
999  
1000  
1001  
1002  
1003  
1004  
1005  
1006  
1007  
1008  
1009  
1009  
1010  
1011  
1012  
1013  
1014  
1015  
1016  
1017  
1018  
1019  
1019  
1020  
1021  
1022  
1023  
1024  
1025  
1026  
1027  
1028  
1029  
1029  
1030  
1031  
1032  
1033  
1034  
1035  
1036  
1037  
1038  
1039  
1039  
1040  
1041  
1042  
1043  
1044  
1045  
1046  
1047  
1048  
1049  
1049  
1050  
1051  
1052  
1053  
1054  
1055  
1056  
1057  
1058  
1059  
1059  
1060  
1061  
1062  
1063  
1064  
1065  
1066  
1067  
1068  
1069  
1069  
1070  
1071  
1072  
1073  
1074  
1075  
1076  
1077  
1078  
1079  
1079  
1080  
1081  
1082  
1083  
1084  
1085  
1086  
1087  
1088  
1089  
1089  
1090  
1091  
1092  
1093  
1094  
1095  
1096  
1097  
1098  
1099  
1099  
1100  
1101  
1102  
1103  
1104  
1105  
1106  
1107  
1108  
1109  
1109  
1110  
1111  
1112  
1113  
1114  
1115  
1116  
1117  
1118  
1119  
1119  
1120  
1121  
1122  
1123  
1124  
1125  
1126  
1127  
1128  
1129  
1129  
1130  
1131  
1132  
1133  
1134  
1135  
1136  
1137  
1138  
1139  
1139  
1140  
1141  
1142  
1143  
1144  
1145  
1146  
1147  
1148  
1149  
1149  
1150  
1151  
1152  
1153  
1154  
1155  
1156  
1157  
1158  
1159  
1159  
1160  
1161  
1162  
1163  
1164  
1165  
1166  
1167  
1168  
1169  
1169  
1170  
1171  
1172  
1173  
1174  
1175  
1176  
1177  
1178  
1179  
1179  
1180  
1181  
1182  
1183  
1184  
1185  
1186  
1187  
1188  
1189  
1189  
1190  
1191  
1192  
1193  
1194  
1195  
1196  
1197  
1198  
1199  
1199  
1200  
1201  
1202  
1203  
1204  
1205  
1206  
1207  
1208  
1209  
1209  
1210  
1211  
1212  
1213  
1214  
1215  
1216  
1217  
1218  
1219  
1219  
1220  
1221  
1222  
1223  
1224  
1225  
1226  
1227  
1228  
1229  
1229  
1230  
1231  
1232  
1233  
1234  
1235  
1236  
1237  
1238  
1239  
1239  
1240  
1241  
1242  
1243  
1244  
1245  
1246  
1247  
1248  
1249  
1249  
1250  
1251  
1252  
1253  
1254  
1255  
1256  
1257  
1258  
1259  
1259  
1260  
1261  
1262  
1263  
1264  
1265  
1266  
1267  
1268  
1269  
1269  
1270  
1271  
1272  
1273  
1274  
1275  
1276  
1277  
1278  
1279  
1279  
1280  
1281  
1282  
1283  
1284  
1285  
1286  
1287  
1288  
1289  
1289  
1290  
1291  
1292  
1293  
1294  
1295  
1296  
1297  
1298  
1299  
1299  
1300  
1301  
1302  
1303  
1304  
1305  
1306  
1307  
1308  
1309  
1309  
1310  
1311  
1312  
1313  
1314  
1315  
1316  
1317  
1318  
1319  
1319  
1320  
1321  
1322  
1323  
1324  
1325  
1326  
1327  
1328  
1329  
1329  
1330  
1331  
1332  
1333  
1334  
1335  
1336  
1337  
1338  
1339  
1339  
1340  
1341  
1342  
1343  
1344  
1345  
1346  
1347  
1348  
1349  
1349  
1350  
1351  
1352  
1353  
1354  
1355  
1356  
1357  
1358  
1359  
1359  
1360  
1361  
1362  
1363  
1364  
1365  
1366  
1367  
1368  
1369  
1369  
1370  
1371  
1372  
1373  
1374  
1375  
1376  
1377  
1378  
1379  
1379  
1380  
1381  
1382  
1383  
1384  
1385  
1386  
1387  
1388  
1389  
1389  
1390  
1391  
1392  
1393  
1394  
1395  
1396  
1397  
1398  
1399  
1399  
1400  
1401  
1402  
1403  
1404  
1405  
1406  
1407  
1408  
1409  
1409  
1410  
1411  
1412  
1413  
1414  
1415  
1416  
1417  
1418  
1419  
1419  
1420  
1421  
1422  
1423  
1424  
1425  
1426  
1427  
1428  
1429  
1429  
1430  
1431  
1432  
1433  
1434  
1435  
1436  
1437  
1438  
1439  
1439  
1440  
1441  
1442  
1443  
1444  
1445  
1446  
1447  
1448  
1449  
1449  
1450  
1451  
1452  
1453  
1454  
1455  
1456  
1457  
1458  
1459  
1459  
1460  
1461  
1462  
1463  
1464  
1465  
1466  
1467  
1468  
1469  
1469  
1470  
1471  
1472  
1473  
1474  
1475  
1476  
1477  
1478  
1479  
1479  
1480  
1481  
1482  
1483  
1484  
1485  
1486  
1487  
1488  
1489  
1489  
1490  
1491  
1492  
1493  
1494  
1495  
1496  
1497  
1498  
1499  
1499  
1500  
1501  
1502  
1503  
1504  
1505  
1506  
1507  
1508  
1509  
1509  
1510  
1511  
1512  
1513  
1514  
1515  
1516  
1517  
1518  
1519  
1519  
1520  
1521  
1522  
1523  
1524  
1525  
1526  
1527  
1528  
1529  
1529  
1530  
1531  
1532  
1533  
1534  
1535  
1536  
1537  
1538  
1539  
1539  
1540  
1541  
1542  
1543  
1544  
1545  
1546  
1547  
1548  
1549  
1549  
1550  
1551  
1552  
1553  
1554  
1555  
1556  
1557  
1558  
1559  
1559  
1560  
1561  
1562  
1563  
1564  
1565  
1566  
1567  
1568  
1569  
1569  
1570  
1571  
1572  
1573  
1574  
1575  
1576  
1577  
1578  
1579  
1579  
1580  
1581  
1582  
1583  
1584  
1585  
1586  
1587  
1588  
1589  
1589  
1590  
1591  
1592  
1593  
1594  
1595  
1596  
1597  
1598  
1599  
1599  
1600  
1601  
1602  
1603  
1604  
1605  
1606  
1607  
1608  
1609  
1609  
1610  
1611  
1612  
1613  
1614  
1615  
1616  
1617  
1618  
1619  
1619  
1620  
1621  
1622  
1623  
1624  
1625  
1626  
1627  
1628  
1629  
1629  
1630  
1631  
1632  
1633  
1634  
1635  
1636  
1637  
1638  
1639  
1639  
1640  
1641  
1642  
1643  
1644  
1645  
1646  
1647  
1648  
1649  
1649  
1650  
1651  
1652  
1653  
1654  
1655  
1656  
1657  
1658  
1659  
1659  
1660  
1661  
1662  
1663  
1664  
1665  
1666  
1667  
1668  
1669  
1669  
1670  
1671  
1672  
1673  
1674  
1675  
1676  
1677  
1678  
1679  
1679  
1680  
1681  
1682  
1683  
1684  
1685  
1686  
1687  
1688  
1689  
1689  
1690  
1691  
1692  
1693  
1694  
1695  
1696  
1697  
1698  
1699  
1699  
1700  
1701  
1702  
1703  
1704  
1705  
1706  
1707  
1708  
1709  
1709  
1710  
1711  
1712  
1713  
1714  
1715  
1716  
1717  
1718  
1719  
1719  
1720  
1721  
1722  
1723  
1724  
1725  
1726  
1727  
1728  
1729  
1729  
1730  
1731  
1732  
1733  
1734  
1735  
1736  
1737  
1738  
1739  
1739  
1740  
1741  
1742  
1743  
1744  
1745  
1746  
1747  
1748  
1749  
1749  
1750  
1751  
1752  
1753  
1754  
1755  
1756  
1757  
1758  
1759  
1759  
1760  
1761  
1762  
1763  
1764  
1765  
1766  
1767  
1768  
1769  
1769  
1770  
1771  
1772  
1773  
1774  
1775  
1776  
1777  
1778  
1779  
1779  
1780  
1781  
1782  
1783  
1784  
1785  
1786  
1787  
1788  
1789  
1789  
1790  
1791  
1792  
1793  
1794  
1795  
1796  
1797  
1798  
1799  
1799  
1800  
1801  
1802  
1803  
1804  
1805  
1806  
1807  
1808  
1809  
1809  
1810  
1811  
1812  
1813  
1814  
1815  
1816  
1817  
1818  
1819  
1819  
1820  
1821  
1822  
1823  
1824  
1825  
1826  
1827  
1828  
1829  
1829  
1830  
1831  
1832  
1833  
1834  
1835  
1836  
1837  
1838  
1839  
1839  
1840  
1841  
1842  
1843  
1844  
1845  
1846  
1847  
1848  
1849  
1849  
1850  
1851  
1852  
1853  
1854  
1855  
1856  
1857  
1858  
1859  
1859  
1860  
1861  
1862  
1863  
1864  
1865  
1866  
1867  
1868  
1869  
1869  
1870  
1871  
1872  
1873  
1874  
1875  
1876  
1877  
1878  
1879  
1879  
1880  
1881  
1882  
1883  
1884  
1885  
1886  
1887  
1888  
1889  
1889  
1890  
1891  
1892  
1893  
1894  
1895  
1896  
1897  
1898  
1899  
1899  
1900  
1901  
1902  
1903  
1904  
1905  
1906  
1907  
1908  
1909  
1909  
1910  
1911  
1912  
1913  
1914  
1915  
1916  
1917  
1918  
1919  
1919  
1920  
1921  
1922  
1923  
1924  
1925  
1926  
1927  
1928  
1929  
1929  
1930

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional illustration of an embodiment of an expandable tubular member having a slotted lower section for use in the apparatus of FIGS. 1a to 3d.

FIG. 7 is a cross-sectional illustration of an embodiment of an expandable 5 tubular member having a pre-expanded upper portion for use in the apparatus of FIGS. 1a to 3d.

FIG. 8 is a cross-sectional illustration of an embodiment of an expandable tubular member having a slotted upper section for use in the apparatus of FIGS. 1a to 3d.

10 FIG. 9 is a graphical illustration of an embodiment of a method of applying an axial force to the expansion cones of the apparatus of FIGS. 1a to 3d.

FIG. 10a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the placement of an embodiment of an apparatus for expanding a tubular member within a wellbore casing.

15 FIG. 10b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10a during the injection of a non-hardenable fluidic material into and out of the apparatus.

20 FIG. 10c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10b during the injection of a hardenable fluidic sealing material into and out of the apparatus.

FIG. 10d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10c after the placement of a valve closure element into the valve passage of the anchoring device of the apparatus.

25 FIG. 10e is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10d after anchoring the expandable tubular member of the apparatus to the wellbore casing.

FIG. 10f is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10e after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

30 FIG. 10g is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10e after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone by pulling on the expansion cone and injecting a pressurized fluid below the expansion cone.

FIG. 10h is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIGS. 10f and 10g after the completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 10i is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 10h after the decoupling and removal of the anchoring device of the apparatus from the wellbore casing.

5 FIG. 11a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure.

FIG. 11b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 11a after anchoring the expandable tubular member of the apparatus to the wellbore casing.

10 FIG. 11c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 11b after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

FIG. 11d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 11c after stopping the axial displacement of the expansion cone prior to deactivating the anchoring device.

15 FIG. 11e is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIGS. 11d after deactivating the anchoring device.

FIG. 11f is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 11e after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone and the deactivated anchoring device.

20 FIG. 11g is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 11f after the completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 12a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore.

25 FIG. 12b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 12a after expanding the expandable expansion cone in order to anchor the expandable tubular member to the wellbore casing.

FIG. 12c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 12b after initiating the axial displacement of the expandable expansion cone.

30 FIG. 12d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 12c after completing the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 13a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore.

FIG. 13b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 13a after activating the shape memory metal inserts in order to anchor the expandable tubular member to the wellbore casing.

5 FIG. 13c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 13b after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

FIG. 13d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 13c after completing the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

10 FIG. 14a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore casing.

FIG. 14b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 14a after coupling the packer to the wellbore casing.

15 FIG. 14c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 14b after initiating the axial displacement of the expandable tubular member towards the expansion cone.

FIG. 14d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 14c after radially expanding the end of the expandable tubular member onto the expansion cone.

20 FIG. 14e is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 14d after decoupling the packer from the wellbore casing.

FIG. 14f is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 14e after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member.

25 FIG. 14g is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 15a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore.

30 FIG. 15b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 15a after coupling the resilient anchor to the wellbore casing.

FIG. 15c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 15b after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

15c after completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 16a is a top view of an embodiment of a resilient anchor for use in the apparatus of FIG. 15a.

FIG. 16b is a top view of the resilient anchor of FIG. 16a after releasing the coiled resilient member.

5 FIG. 17a is a top view of an alternate embodiment of a resilient anchor for use in the apparatus of FIG. 15a.

FIG. 17b is a top view of the resilient anchor of FIG. 17a after releasing the resilient elements.

10 FIG. 18a is a fragmentary cross-sectional top view of an alternate embodiment of a resilient anchor for use in the apparatus of FIG. 15a.

FIG. 18b is a fragmentary cross-sectional top view of the resilient anchor of FIG. 18a after releasing the resilient elements.

FIG. 19a is a front view of an embodiment of an expandable tubular member including one or more resilient panels.

15 FIG. 19b is a cross-sectional view of the expandable tubular member of FIG. 19a.

FIG. 19c is a bottom view of the expandable tubular member of FIG. 19a.

FIG. 20a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a 20 preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore.

FIG. 20b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 20a after coupling the anchor to the wellbore casing.

FIG. 20c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 20b after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

25 FIG. 20d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 20c after completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 21a is an illustration of an embodiment of the anchor of the apparatus of FIG. 20a.

30 FIG. 21b is an illustration of the anchor of FIG. 21a after outwardly extending the spikes.

FIG. 22a is an illustration of an alternative embodiment of the anchor of the apparatus of FIG. 20a.

FIG. 22b is an illustration of the anchor of FIG. 22a after outwardly extending the spikes.

FIG. 22c is a cross-sectional illustration of the petals of the anchor of FIG. 22a.

5 FIG. 23a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore.

10 FIG. 23b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 20a after injecting a quantity of a hardenable fluidic sealing material into the open hole wellbore section proximate the lower section of the expandable tubular member.

15 FIG. 23c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 23b after permitting the hardenable fluidic sealing material to at least partially cure.

FIG. 23d is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 23c after initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone.

15 FIG. 23e is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 23d after completion of the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member.

20 FIG. 24a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore casing and an open hole wellbore section.

25 FIG. 24b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 24a after releasing the packer.

FIG. 24c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 24b after extruding the expandable tubular member off of the expansion cone.

30 FIG. 25a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure positioned within a wellbore casing and an open hole wellbore section.

FIG. 25b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 25a after injecting a quantity of a fluidic material into the expandable tubular member having a higher density than the fluid within the preexisting structure outside of the expandable tubular member.

FIG. 25c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 25b after extruding the expandable tubular member off of the expansion cone.

FIG. 26a is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure.

FIG. 26b is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the apparatus of FIG. 5 26a after the initiation of the radial expansion process.

FIG. 26c is a fragmentary cross-sectional illustration of the completion of the radial expansion process using the apparatus of FIG. 26b.

FIG. 27 is a flow chart illustration of a preferred embodiment of a method of coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure.

10 FIG. 28 is a cross-sectional illustration of an expandable tubular coupled to a preexisting structure using an expansion cone.

FIG. 29 is a cross-sectional illustration of the subsequent application of radial pressure to the expandable tubular member of FIG. 28.

#### Detailed Description

15 A method and apparatus for coupling tubular members to a preexisting structure is provided. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular members are coupled to the preexisting structure by radially expanding the tubular members into contact with the preexisting structure. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular members are radially expanded by anchoring one end of the tubular members to the preexisting 20 structure and then pulling an expansion cone through the tubular members. In this manner, the tubular members are radially expanded and coupled to the preexisting structure.

Referring initially to FIGS. 1a, 1b, 1c, 1d, 1e, 1f and 1g, a preferred embodiment of a method and apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will be described. Referring to Fig. 1a, a wellbore casing 100 is positioned within a subterranean formation 105. The wellbore casing 100 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 100 further includes one or more openings 110 that may have been the result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 100, or 30 due to a prior perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 105. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 110 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 100 unless they are sealed off.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 115 is utilized to seal off the 35 openings 110 in the wellbore casing 100. More generally, the apparatus 115 is

preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 115 preferably includes a first support member 120, a second support member 125, an expansion cone 130, an anchoring device 135, and 5 expandable tubular member 140, and one or more sealing members 145.

The first support member 120 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The first support member 120 is further coupled to the anchoring device 135. The first support member 120 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals 10 from a surface location to the anchoring device 135. The first support member 120 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The second support member 125 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The second support member 125 is further coupled to the 15 expansion cone 130. The second support member 125 is preferably adapted to permit the expansion cone 130 to be axially displaced relative to the first support member 120. The second support member 125 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

20 The expansion cone 130 is coupled to the second support member 125. The expansion cone 130 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 140 when the expansion cone 130 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 140. In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 130 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. 25 utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which 30 claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 35 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no.

25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent 5 application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 10 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. 15 utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,108, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 20 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, 25 attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The anchoring device 135 is coupled to the first support member 120. The anchoring device 135 is preferably adapted to be controllably coupled to the expandable tubular member 140 and the wellbore casing 100. In this manner, the 30 anchoring device 135 preferably controllably anchors the expandable tubular member 140 to the wellbore casing 100 to facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 140 by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 130. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 135 includes one or more expandable elements 150 that are adapted to controllably extend from the body of 35 the anchoring device 135 to engage both the expandable tubular member 140 and

the wellbore casing 100. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable elements 150 are actuated using fluidic pressure. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 135 is any one of the hydraulically actuated packers commercially available from Halliburton Energy Services or Baker-Hughes.

5. The expandable tubular member 140 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 130. The expandable tubular member 140 is further preferably adapted to be removably coupled to the expandable element 150 of the anchoring device 135. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 140 includes one or more anchoring windows 155 for permitting the expandable elements 150 of the 10 anchoring device 135 to engage the wellbore casing 100 and the expandable tubular member 140.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 140 further includes a lower section 160, an intermediate section 165, and an upper section 170. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 160 includes the anchoring 15 windows 155 in order to provide anchoring at an end portion of the expandable tubular member 140. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the lower and intermediate sections, 160 and 165, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 170 in order to optimally couple the radially expanded portion of the expandable tubular member 140 to the wellbore casing 100.

20. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 140 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. 25 utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, 30 attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket 35 no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of

U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The sealing members 145 are coupled to the outer surface of the upper portion 170 of the expandable tubular member 140. The sealing members 145 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 140 and the wellbore casing 100. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 115 includes a plurality of sealing members 145. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 145 surround and isolate the opening 110.

As illustrated in FIG. 1a, the apparatus 115 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 100 with the expandable tubular member 140 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 110. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 115 includes a plurality of sealing members 145 that are positioned above and

below the opening 110. In this manner, the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 140 optimally fluidically isolates the opening 110.

As illustrated in FIG. 1b, the apparatus 115 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 100 using the anchoring device 135. In a preferred embodiment, the 5 anchoring device 135 is pressurized and the expandable element 150 is extended from the anchoring device 135 through the corresponding anchoring window 155 in the expandable tubular member 140 into intimate contact with the wellbore casing 100. In this manner, the lower section 160 of the expandable tubular member 140 is removably coupled to the wellbore casing 100.

10 In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 140 and the wellbore casing 100. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided 15 around the tubular member 140.

As illustrated in FIG. 1c, the expansion cone 130 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the second support member 125. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 130 radially expands the expandable tubular member 140 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore 20 casing 100.

In an alternative embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 1d, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 130 is enhanced by injecting a pressurized fluidic material into the annular space between the first support member 120 and the second support member 125. In this manner, an upward axial force is applied to the 25 lower annular face of the expansion cone 130 using the pressurized fluidic material. In this manner, a temporary need for increased axial force during the radial expansion process can be easily satisfied.

As illustrated in FIGS. 1e, 1f, and 1g, after the expandable tubular member 140 has been radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 30 130, the first support member 120 and the anchoring device 135 are preferably removed from expandable tubular member 140 by de-pressurizing the anchoring device 135 and then lifting the first support member 120 and anchoring device 135 from the wellbore casing 100.

As illustrated in FIG. 1g, in a preferred embodiment, the opening 110 in the 35 wellbore casing 100 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 140. In

this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 100 are optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 115 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 2a, 2b, 2c, 2d, 2e and 2f, an alternative embodiment of a 5 method and apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will be described. Referring to Fig. 2a, a wellbore casing 200 and an open hole wellbore section 205 are positioned within a subterranean formation 210. The wellbore casing 200 and the open hole wellbore section 205 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction.

10 In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 215 is utilized to couple an expandable tubular member to an end portion of the wellbore casing 200. In this manner, the open hole wellbore section 205 is provided with a cased portion. More generally, the apparatus 215 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

15 The apparatus 215 preferably includes a first support member 220, a second support member 225, an expansion cone 230, an anchoring device 235, an expandable tubular member 240, one or more upper sealing members 245, one or more lower sealing members 250, and a flexible coupling element 255.

20 The first support member 220 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The first support member 220 is further coupled to the anchoring device 235. The first support member 220 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the anchoring device 235. The first support member 220 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, 25 coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

25 The second support member 225 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The second support member 225 is further coupled to the expansion cone 230. The second support member 225 is preferably adapted to permit the expansion cone 230 to be axially displaced relative to the first support member 220. The second support member 225 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

30 In an alternative embodiment, the support member 220 is telescopically coupled to the support member 225, and the support member 225 is coupled to a 35 surface support structure.

The expansion cone 230 is coupled to the second support member 225. The expansion cone 230 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 240 when the expansion cone 230 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 240. In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 5 230 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed 10 on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of 20 U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) 25 U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application 30 serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 35 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no.

25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, 5 filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The anchoring device 235 is coupled to the first support member 220. The anchoring device 235 is preferably adapted to be controllably coupled to the 10 expandable tubular member 240 and the open hole wellbore section 205. In this manner, the anchoring device 235 preferably controllably anchors the expandable tubular member 240 to the open hole wellbore section 205 to facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 240 by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 230. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 235 includes 15 one or more expandable elements 260 that are adapted to controllably extend from the body of the anchoring device 235 to engage both the flexible coupling element 255 and the open hole wellbore section 205. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable elements 260 are actuated using fluidic pressure. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 235 is any one of the hydraulically actuated 20 packers commercially available from Halliburton Energy Services or Baker-Hughes.

The expandable tubular member 240 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 230. The expandable tubular member 240 is further preferably coupled to the flexible coupling element 255.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 240 further 25 includes a lower section 265, an intermediate section 270, and an upper section 275. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 265 is coupled to the flexible coupling element 255 in order to provide anchoring at an end portion of the expandable tubular member 240. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the lower and intermediate sections, 265 and 270, are less than the wall thickness of 30 the upper section 275 in order to optimally couple the radially expanded portion of the expandable tubular member 240 to the wellbore casing 200 and the open hole wellbore section 205.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 240 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility 35 patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on

12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228,

attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The upper sealing members 245 are coupled to the outer surface of the upper portion 275 of the expandable tubular member 240. The upper sealing members 245 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 240 and the wellbore casing 200. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 215 includes a plurality of upper sealing members 245.

The lower sealing members 250 are coupled to the outer surface of the upper portion 275 of the expandable tubular member 240. The lower sealing members 250 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 240 and the open wellbore section 205. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 215 includes a plurality of lower sealing members 250.

The flexible coupling element 255 is coupled to the lower portion 265 of the expandable tubular member 240. The flexible coupling element 255 is preferably adapted to radially expand by the anchoring device 235 into engagement within the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205. In this manner, the lower portion 265 of the expandable tubular member 240 is coupled to the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205. In a preferred embodiment, the flexible coupling element 255 is a slotted tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the flexible coupling element 255 includes one or more hook elements for engaging the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205.

As illustrated in FIG. 2a, the apparatus 215 is preferably positioned with the expandable tubular member 240 positioned in overlapping relation with a portion of the wellbore casing 200. In this manner, the radially expanded tubular member 240 is coupled to the lower portion of the wellbore casing 200. In a preferred embodiment, the upper sealing members 245 are positioned in opposing relation to the lower portion of the wellbore casing 200 and the lower sealing members 250 are positioned in opposing relation to the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205. In this manner, the interface between the radially expanded tubular member 240 and the wellbore casing 200 and open hole wellbore section 205 is optimally fluidly sealed.

As illustrated in FIG. 2b, the apparatus 215 is then anchored to the open hole wellbore section 205 using the anchoring device 235. In a preferred

embodiment, the anchoring device 235 is pressurized and the expandable element 260 is radially extended from the anchoring device 235 causing the flexible coupling element 255 to radially expand into intimate contact with the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205. In this manner, the lower section 265 of the expandable tubular member 240 is removably coupled to the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205.

5 In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 240 and the wellbore casing 100 and/or the open hole wellbore section 205. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially 10 cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 240.

15 As illustrated in FIG. 2c, the expansion cone 230 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the second support member 225. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 230 radially expands the expandable tubular member 240 into intimate contact with the walls of the open hole wellbore section 205.

20 In an alternative embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 2d, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 230 is enhanced by injecting a pressurized fluidic material into the annular space between the first support member 220 and the second support member 225. In this manner, an upward axial force is applied to the lower annular face of the expansion cone 230 using the pressurized fluidic material. In this manner, a temporary need for increased axial force during the radial 25 expansion process can be easily satisfied.

As illustrated in FIGS. 2e and 2f, after the expandable tubular member 240 has been radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 230, the first support member 220 and the anchoring device 235 are preferably removed from expandable tubular member 240 by de-pressurizing the anchoring device 235 and then lifting the first support member 220 and anchoring device 235 from the wellbore casing 200 and the open hole wellbore section 205.

30 Referring to FIGS. 3a, 3b, 3c, and 3d, an alternative embodiment of a method and apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will be described. Referring to Fig. 3a, a wellbore casing 300 is positioned 35 within a subterranean formation 305. The wellbore casing 300 may be positioned in

any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 300 further includes one or more openings 310 that may have been the result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 300, or due to a prior perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 305.

5 As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 310 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 300 unless they are sealed off.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 315 is utilized to seal off the openings 310 in the wellbore casing 300. More generally, the apparatus 315 is 10 preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 315 preferably includes a support member 320, an expansion cone 325, an anchoring device 330, an expandable tubular member 335, and one or more sealing members 340.

15 The support member 320 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 320 is further coupled to the expansion cone 325 and the anchoring device 330. The support member 320 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the anchoring device 330. The support member 20 320 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The expansion cone 325 is coupled to the support member 320. The expansion cone 325 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 335 when the expansion cone 325 is axially displaced relative to the 25 expandable tubular member 335. In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 325 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. 30 utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, 35 attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338,

attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16.1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket 5 no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional 10 application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, 15 which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) 20 U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The anchoring device 330 is coupled to the support member 320 and the 30 expansion cone 325. The anchoring device 335 is preferably adapted to controllably couple to the expandable tubular member 335 to the wellbore casing 300. In this manner, the anchoring device 330 preferably controllably anchors the expandable tubular member 335 to the wellbore casing 300 to facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 335 by the axial displacement of the expansion 35 cone 325. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 330 includes one or

more expandable elements 345 that are adapted to controllably extend from the body of the anchoring device 330 to radially displace corresponding engagement elements 350 provided in the expandable tubular member 335. In a preferred embodiment, the radial displacement of the engagement elements 350 couples the

5 expandable tubular member 335 to the wellbore casing 300. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable elements 345 are pistons that are actuated using fluidic pressure. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 330 is any one of the hydraulically actuated anchoring devices commercially available from Halliburton Energy Services or Baker-Hughes.

10 In an alternative embodiment, the expandable elements 345 are explosive devices that controllably generate a radially directed explosive force for radially displacing the engagement elements 350. In a preferred embodiment, the explosive expandable elements 345 are shaped explosive charges commercially available from Halliburton Energy Services.

15 The expandable tubular member 335 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 325. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 335 includes one or more engagement devices 350 that are adapted to be radially displaced by the anchoring device 330 into engagement with the walls of the wellbore casing 300. In this manner, the expandable tubular member 335 is coupled to the wellbore 20 casing 300. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices 350 include teeth for biting into the surface of the wellbore casing 100.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 335 further includes a lower section 355, an intermediate section 360, and an upper section 365. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 355 includes the engagement 25 device 350 in order to provide anchoring at an end portion of the expandable tubular member 335. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the lower and intermediate sections, 355 and 360, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 365 in order to optimally couple the radially expanded portion of the expandable tubular member 335 to the wellbore casing 300.

30 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 335 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. 35 utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed

on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611,  
5 attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket  
10 no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional  
15 application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000,  
20 which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S.  
25 provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15)  
30 U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The sealing members 340 are coupled to the outer surface of the upper  
35 portion 365 of the expandable tubular member 335. The sealing members 340 are

preferably adapted to engage and fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 335 and the wellbore casing 300. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 315 includes a plurality of sealing members 340. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 340 surround and isolate the 5 opening 310.

As illustrated in FIG. 3a, the apparatus 315 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 300 with the expandable tubular member 335 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 310. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 315 includes a plurality of sealing members 340 that are positioned above and 10 below the opening 310. In this manner, the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 335 optimally fluidly isolates the opening 310.

As illustrated in FIG. 3b, the expandable tubular member 335 of the apparatus 315 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 300 using the anchoring device 330. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 330 is pressurized 15 and the expandable element 345 is extended from the anchoring device 330 and radially displaces the corresponding engagement elements 350 of the expandable tubular member 335 into intimate contact with the wellbore casing 300. In this manner, the lower section 355 of the expandable tubular member 335 is coupled to the wellbore casing 300.

20 In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 335 and the wellbore casing 300. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided 25 around the tubular member 335.

As illustrated in FIG. 3c, the anchoring device 330 is then deactivated and the expansion cone 325 is axially displaced by applying an axial force to the support member 320. In a preferred embodiment, the deactivation of the anchoring device 330 causes the expandable elements 345 to radially retract into the anchoring 30 device 330. Alternatively, the expandable elements 345 are resiliently coupled to the anchoring device 330. In this manner, the expandable elements 345 retract automatically upon the deactivation of the anchoring device 330. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 325 radially expands the expandable tubular member 335 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore 35 casing 300.

As illustrated in FIG. 3d, after the expandable tubular member 335 has been radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 335, the support member 320, expansion cone 325, and the anchoring device 330 are preferably removed from the expanded expandable tubular member 335.

5 In a preferred embodiment, the opening 310 in the wellbore casing 300 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 335. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 300 are optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 315 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIG. 4, an embodiment of a system 400 for applying an axial 10 force to the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325 includes a lifting device 405, a first support member 410, a shock absorber 415, and a second support member 420. In a preferred embodiment, the system 400 is adapted to minimize the transfer of shock loads, created during the completion of the radial expansion of tubular members by the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325, to the lifting device 405. In 15 this manner, the radial expansion of tubular members by the expansion cones 130, 230 and 325 is provided in an optimally safe manner.

The lifting device 405 is supported at a surface location and is coupled to the first support member 410. The lifting device 405 may comprise any number of conventional commercially available lifting devices suitable for manipulating tubular 20 members within a wellbore.

The first support member 410 is coupled to the lifting device 405 and the shock absorber 415. The first support member 410 may comprise any number of conventional commercially available support members such as, for example, coiled tubing, a drill string, a wireline, braided wire, or a slick line.

25 The shock absorber 415 is coupled to the first support member 410 and the second support member 420. The shock absorber 415 is preferably adapted to absorb shock loads transmitted from the second support member 420. The shock absorber 415 may be any number of conventional commercially available shock absorbers.

30 The second support member 420 is coupled to the shock absorber 415. The second support member 420 is further preferably adapted to be coupled to one or more of the expansion cones 130, 230 and 325.

In a preferred embodiment, during operation of the system 400, the lifting device applies an axial force to one of the expansion cones 130, 230 and 325 in 35 order to radially expand tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, upon the

completion of the radial expansion process, when the expansion cones 130, 230 and 325, exit the radially expanded tubular members, the sudden shock loads generated are absorbed, or at least minimized, by the shock absorber 415. In this manner, the radial expansion of tubular members by pulling the expansion cones

5 130, 230 and 325 using the lifting device 405 is provided in an optimally safe manner.

Referring to FIG. 5, an embodiment of a coupling system 500 for use in the expandable tubular members 140, 240, and 335 will now be described. In a preferred embodiment, the system 500 includes an upper ring 505, a sealing element 510, and a lower ring 515. In a preferred embodiment, the upper ring 505, the sealing element 510, and the lower ring 515 are provided on the outer surfaces of the expandable tubular members 140, 240, and 335. In this manner, when the expandable tubular members 140, 240 and 335 are radially expanded, the upper ring 505, the sealing element 510, and the lower ring 515 engage the interior 10 surface of the preexisting structure that the expandable tubular members 140, 240 and 335 are coupled to. In a preferred embodiment, the upper and lower rings, 505 and 515, penetrate the interior surface of the preexisting structure that the expandable tubular members 140, 240 and 335 are coupled to in order to optimally anchor the tubular members 140, 240 and 335 to the preexisting structure. In a 15 preferred embodiment, the sealing element 510 is compressed into contact with the interior surface of the preexisting structure that the expandable tubular members 140, 240 and 335 are coupled to in order to optimally fluidically seal the interface between the tubular members 140, 240 and 335 and the preexisting structure.

20

In a preferred embodiment, the upper and lower rings, 505 and 515, extend 25 from the outer surfaces of the tubular members 140, 240 and 335 by a distance of about 1/64 to 1/2 inches. In a preferred embodiment, the upper and lower rings, 505 and 515, extend about 1/8" from the outer surfaces of the tubular members 140, 240, and 335 in order to optimally engage the preexisting structure.

In a preferred embodiment, the sealing element 510 extends from the outer 30 surfaces of the tubular members 140, 240 and 335 by a distance substantially equal to the extension of the upper and lower rings, 505 and 515, above the outer surfaces of the tubular members 140, 240 and 335. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing element 510 is fabricated from rubber in order to optimally fluidically seal and engage the preexisting structure.

In a preferred embodiment, the tubular members 140, 240 and 335 include a plurality of the coupling systems 500. In a preferred embodiment, the coupling systems 500 are provided on the lower, intermediate, and upper portions of the tubular members 140, 240, and 335.

5 Referring now to FIG. 6, a preferred embodiment of an expandable tubular member 600 for use in the apparatus 115, 215 and 315 will be described. The tubular member 600 preferably includes a lower portion 605, an intermediate portion 610, and an upper portion 615.

10 The lower portion 605 is coupled to the intermediate portion 610. In a preferred embodiment, the lower portion 605 is further adapted to mate with the anchoring devices 135, 235, and 330. In a preferred embodiment, the lower portion 605 further preferably includes one or more slotted portions 620 for facilitating the radial expansion of the lower portion 605 by the anchoring devices 135, 235, and 330. In this manner, the lower portion 605 of the tubular member 600 is preferably 15 radially expanded by the anchoring devices 135, 235, and 330 into contact with the preexisting structure. Furthermore, in this manner, the lower portion 605 of the tubular member 600 is anchored to the preexisting structure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process.

20 The intermediate portion 610 is coupled to the lower portion 605 and the upper portion 615. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate portions, 605 and 610, are less than the wall thickness of the upper portion 615 in order to facilitate the radial expansion of the tubular member 600. In a preferred embodiment, the lower and intermediate portions, 605 and 610, are preexpanded to mate with the expansion cone.

25 Referring to FIG. 7, a preferred embodiment of an expandable tubular member 700 for use in the apparatus 115, 215 and 315 will be described. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular member 700 minimizes the shock loads created upon the completion of the radial expansion process. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular member 700 includes a lower portion 705, a lower transitional portion 710, an intermediate portion 715, an upper transitional portion 720, an upper portion 725, and a sealing element 730.

30 The lower portion 705 is coupled to the lower transitional portion 710. The lower portion 705 is preferably adapted to mate with the expansion cone and the anchoring device.

The lower transitional portion 710 is coupled to the lower portion 705 and the intermediate portion 715. In a preferred embodiment, the lower transitional portion 710 is adapted to mate with the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower portion 705 and the lower 5 transitional portion 710 are less than the wall thicknesses of the intermediate portion 715, the upper transitional portion 720 and the upper portion 725 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion process.

The intermediate portion 715 is coupled to the lower transitional portion 710 and the upper transitional portion 720. In a preferred embodiment, the outside 10 diameter of the intermediate portion 715 is less than the wall thicknesses of the lower portion 705 and the upper portion 725.

The upper transitional portion 720 is coupled to the intermediate portion 715 and the upper portion 725.

The upper portion 725 is coupled to the upper transitional portion 720.

15 The sealing element 730 is coupled to the outside surface of the intermediate portion 715. In a preferred embodiment, the outside diameter of the sealing element 730 is less than or equal to the outside diameter of the lower portion 705 and the upper portion 725 in order to optimally protect the sealing element 703 during placement of the tubular member 700 within the preexisting structure.

20 In a preferred embodiment, during the radial expansion of the tubular member 700 using the apparatus 115, 215 and 315, the preexpansion of the upper transitional portion 720 and the upper portion 725 reduces the shock loads typically created during the end portion of the radial expansion process. In this manner, the radial expansion process is optimally provided in a safe manner. Furthermore, 25 because the sealing element 730 is preferably recessed below the surfaces of the lower portion 705 and the upper portion 725, the sealing element 730 is optimally protected from damage during the placement of the tubular member 700 within the preexisting structure.

30 Referring to FIG. 8, a preferred embodiment of an expandable tubular member 800 for use in the apparatus 115, 215 and 315 will be described. The tubular member 800 preferably includes a lower portion 805, an intermediate portion 810, and an upper portion 815.

The lower portion 805 is coupled to the intermediate portion 810. In a preferred embodiment, the lower portion 805 is further adapted to mate with the 35 expansion cones 130, 230, 325 and the anchoring devices 135, 235, and 330.

The intermediate portion 810 is coupled to the lower portion 805 and the upper portion 815. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate portions, 805 and 810, are less than the wall thickness of the upper portion 815 in order to facilitate the radial expansion of the tubular member 800. In 5 a preferred embodiment, the lower and intermediate portions, 805 and 810, are preexpanded to mate with the expansion cone.

The upper portion 815 is coupled to the intermediate portion 810. In a preferred embodiment, the upper portion 815 further preferably includes one or more slotted portions 820 for facilitating the radial expansion of the upper portion 10 815 by the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325. In this manner, the upper portion 815 of the tubular member 800 is preferably radially expanded by the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325 with minimal shock loads when the expansion cones 130, 230 and 325 exit the expandable tubular member 800.

Referring to FIG. 9, a preferred embodiment of a method of applying an axial force to the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325 will now be described. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325 during the radial expansion process is provided by applying an axial force to the expansion cones 130, 230, and 325. In a preferred embodiment, the axial force provided includes the application of a substantially constant axial force for some 20 time periods and the application of increased axial force for other time periods in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion process by minimizing the effects of friction. In a preferred embodiment, the application of the increased axial force is provided on a periodic basis in order to optimally provide a variable contact area between the expansion cone and the tubular member being expanded. In an 25 alternative embodiment, the application of the increased axial force is provided on a random basis in order to optimally provide a variable contact area between the expansion cone and the tubular member being expanded. In a preferred embodiment, the duty cycle of the application of constant and increased axial forces ranges from about 90/10 % to 60/40 % in order to optimally radially expand the 30 tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the ratio of the increased axial force to the substantially constant axial force ranges from about 1.5 to 1 to about 4 to 1 in order to optimally provide a variable contact area between the expansion cone and the tubular member being expanded, promote more even wear of the expansion cone, and clean debris from the expansion cone surface.

Referring to FIGS. 10a to 10i, an embodiment of an apparatus and method for forming a wellbore casing will now be described. As illustrated in FIG. 10a, a wellbore casing 1000 and an open hole wellbore section 1005 are provided in a subterranean formation 1010. The wellbore casing 1000 and open hole wellbore section 1005 may be orientated at any orientation ranging from the vertical to the horizontal. In a preferred embodiment, a new section of wellbore casing is formed in the open hole wellbore section 1005 using an apparatus 1015. More generally, the apparatus 1015 is utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

10 The apparatus 1015 preferably includes a first support member 1020, a second support member 1025, an expansion cone 1030, an anchoring device 1035, an expandable tubular member 1040, one or more upper sealing members 1045, one or more lower sealing members 1050, and a flexible coupling element 1055.

15 The first support member 1020 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The first support member 1020 is further coupled to the anchoring device 1035. The first support member 1020 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the anchoring device 1035. The first support member 1020 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided 20 wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

25 The second support member 1025 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The second support member 1025 is further coupled to the expansion cone 1030. The second support member 1025 is preferably adapted to permit the expansion cone 1030 to be axially displaced relative to the first support member 1020. The second support member 1025 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling 30 stock material.

35 In an alternative embodiment, the support member 1020 is telescopically coupled to the support member 1025, and the support member 1025 is coupled to a surface support member.

The expansion cone 1030 is coupled to the second support member 1025. The expansion cone 1030 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 1040 when the expansion cone 1030 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 1040. In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1030 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1)

U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,108, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent

application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The anchoring device 1035 is coupled to the first support member 1020. The anchoring device 1035 is preferably adapted to be controllably coupled to the

5 expandable tubular member 1040 and the open hole wellbore section 1005. In this manner, the anchoring device 1035 preferably controllably anchors the expandable tubular member 1040 to the open hole wellbore section 1005 to facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 1040 by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1030.

10 In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1035 includes one or more expandable elements 1060 that are adapted to controllably extend from the body of the anchoring device 1035 to engage both the flexible coupling element 1055 and the open hole wellbore section 1005. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable elements 1060 are actuated using fluidic pressure.

15 In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1035 further includes a fluid passage 1036 adapted to receive a ball plug or other similar valving element. In this manner, fluidic materials can be exhausted from the anchoring device 1035 and the fluid passage 1036 can be controllably plugged. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1035 is any one of the hydraulically actuated packers

20 commercially available from Halliburton Energy Services or Baker-Hughes, modified in accordance with the teachings of the present disclosure.

25 In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring devices 135, 235, and 330 are also modified to include a fluid passage that can be controllably plugged in order to permit fluidic materials to be exhausted from the anchoring devices 135, 235, and 330.

The expandable tubular member 1040 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 1030. The expandable tubular member 1040 is further preferably coupled to the flexible coupling element 1055.

30 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1040 further includes a lower section 1065, an intermediate section 1070, and an upper section 1075. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1065 is coupled to the flexible coupling element 1055 in order to provide anchoring at an end portion of the expandable tubular member 1040. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the lower and intermediate sections, 1065 and 1070, are less than the wall thickness

35 of the upper section 1075 in order to optimally couple the radially expanded portion

of the expandable tubular member 1040 to the wellbore casing 1000 and the open hole wellbore section 1005.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1040 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no.

60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, 5 attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1040 is further provided in accordance with the teachings of embodiments of expandable tubular members described above and illustrated in FIGS. 5-8.

10 The upper sealing members 1045 are coupled to the outer surface of the upper portion 1075 of the expandable tubular member 1040. The upper sealing members 1045 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 1040 and the wellbore casing 1000. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1015 includes a plurality of 15 upper sealing members 1045.

20 The lower sealing members 1050 are coupled to the outer surface of the upper portion 1075 of the expandable tubular member 1040. The lower sealing members 1050 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 1040 and the open wellbore section 1005. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1015 includes a 25 plurality of lower sealing members 1050.

30 The flexible coupling element 1055 is coupled to the lower portion 1065 of the expandable tubular member 1040. The flexible coupling element 1055 is preferably adapted to radially expand by the anchoring device 1035 into engagement within the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005. In this manner, the lower portion 1065 of the expandable tubular member 1040 is coupled to the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005. In a preferred embodiment, the flexible coupling element 1055 is a slotted tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the flexible coupling element 1055 includes one or more hook 35 elements for engaging the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005.

As illustrated in FIG. 10a, the apparatus 1015 is preferably positioned with the expandable tubular member 1040 positioned in overlapping relation with a portion of the wellbore casing 1000. In this manner, the radially expanded tubular member 1040 is coupled to the lower portion of the wellbore casing 1000. In a 35 preferred embodiment, the upper sealing members 1045 are positioned in opposing

relation to the lower portion of the wellbore casing 1000 and the lower sealing members 1050 are positioned in opposing relation to the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005. In this manner, the interface between the radially expanded tubular member 1040 and the wellbore casing 1000 and open hole wellbore section 5 1005 is optimally fluidically sealed.

As illustrated in FIG. 10b, in a preferred embodiment, a quantity of a non-hardenable fluidic material is then injected into and then out of the apparatus 1015. In a preferred embodiment, the non-hardenable material is discharged from the apparatus 1015 using the valveable flow passage 1065. The non-hardenable fluidic 10 material may be any number of conventional commercially available fluidic materials such as, for example, drilling mud.

As illustrated in FIG. 10c, in a preferred embodiment, a quantity of a hardenable fluidic sealing material is then injected into and out of the apparatus 1015. In a preferred embodiment, the hardenable fluidic sealing material is exhausted from the apparatus 1015 using the valveable flow passage 1065. In a preferred embodiment, the hardenable fluidic sealing material is permitted to completely fill the annular space between the tubular member 1040 and the open hole wellbore section 1005. The hardenable fluidic sealing material may be any number of conventional commercially available materials such as, for example, 15 cement, slag mix and/or epoxy resin. In this manner, a fluidic sealing annular 20 element is provided around the radially expanded tubular member 1040.

As illustrated in FIG. 10d, in a preferred embodiment, another quantity of a non-hardenable fluidic material is then injected into and out of the apparatus 1015. In a preferred embodiment, a ball plug or dart 1080, or other similar fluid passage 25 blocking device, is placed into the non-hardenable fluid material. In a preferred embodiment, the ball plug 1080 then seats in and seals off the valveable fluid passage 1065. In this manner, the anchoring device 1035 is then pressurized to anchor the tubular member 1040 to the open hole wellbore section 1005.

In an alternative embodiment, the valveable fluid passage 1065 includes a 30 remote or pressure activated valve for sealing off the valveable fluid passage 1065.

As illustrated in FIG. 10e, in a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1015 is then anchored to the open hole wellbore section 1005 using the anchoring device 1035. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1035 is pressurized and the expandable element 1060 is radially extended from the anchoring device 1035 35 causing the flexible coupling element 1055 to radially expand into intimate contact

with the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005. In this manner, the lower section 1065 of the expandable tubular member 1040 is removably coupled to the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005.

As illustrated in FIG. 10f, the expansion cone 1030 is then axially displaced 5 by applying an axial force to the second support member 1025. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1030 radially expands the expandable tubular member 1040 into intimate contact with the walls of the open hole wellbore section 1005.

In an alternative embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 10g, the axial 10 displacement of the expansion cone 1030 is enhanced by injecting a pressurized fluidic material into the annular space between the first support member 1020 and the second support member 1025. In this manner, an upward axial force is applied to the lower annular face of the expansion cone 1030 using the pressurized fluidic material. In this manner, a temporary need for increased axial force during the 15 radial expansion process can be easily satisfied.

In a preferred embodiment, the hardenable fluidic sealing material is then permitted to at least partial cure.

As illustrated in FIGS. 10h and 10i, after the expandable tubular member 1040 has been radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 20 1030, the first support member 1020 and the anchoring device 1035 are preferably removed from expandable tubular member 1040 by de-pressurizing the anchoring device 1035 and then lifting the first support member 1020 and anchoring device 1035 from the wellbore casing 1000 and the open hole wellbore section 1005.

In a preferred embodiment, the resulting new section of wellbore casing 25 includes the radially expanded tubular member 1040 and the outer annular layer of the cured fluidic sealing material. In this manner, a new section of wellbore casing is optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 1015 is used to form and/or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 11a to 11g, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus 30 and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 11a, a wellbore casing 1100 is positioned within a subterranean formation 1105. The wellbore casing 1100 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 1100 further includes one or more openings 1110 that may have been the 35 result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 1100, or due to a prior

perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 1105. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 1110 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 1100 unless they are sealed off.

5 In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 1115 is utilized to seal off the openings 1110 in the wellbore casing 1100. More generally, the apparatus 1115 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

10 The apparatus 1115 preferably includes a first support member 1120, a second support member 1125, an expansion cone 1130, an anchoring device 1135, and expandable tubular member 1140, and one or more sealing members 1145.

15 The first support member 1120 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The first support member 1120 is further coupled to the anchoring device 1135. The first support member 1120 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the anchoring device 1135. The first support member 1120 preferably has a substantially hollow annular cross sectional shape. The first support member 1120 may, for example, be fabricated from conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock 20 material.

25 The second support member 1125 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The second support member 1125 is further coupled to the expansion cone 1130. The second support member 1125 is preferably adapted to permit the expansion cone 1130 to be axially displaced relative to the first support member 1120. The second support member 1125 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

30 In a preferred embodiment, the first support member 1120 is coupled to a surface location by a slip joint and/or sliding sleeve apparatus that is concentrically coupled to the second support member 1125.

35 The expansion cone 1130 is coupled to the second support member 1125. The expansion cone 1130 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 1140 when the expansion cone 1130 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 1140. In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1130 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1)

U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent

application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The anchoring device 1135 is coupled to the first support member 1120. The anchoring device 1135 is preferably adapted to be controllably coupled to the 5 expandable tubular member 1140 and the wellbore casing 1100. In this manner, the anchoring device 1135 preferably controllably anchors the expandable tubular member 1140 to the wellbore casing 1100 to facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 1140 by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1130. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1135 includes one or more 10 expandable elements 1150 that are adapted to controllably extend from the body of the anchoring device 1135 to engage both the expandable tubular member 1140 and the wellbore casing 1100. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable elements 1150 are actuated using fluidic pressure. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1135 is any one of the hydraulically actuated packers commercially available 15 from Halliburton Energy Services or Baker-Hughes modified in accordance with the teachings of the present disclosure.

The expandable tubular member 1140 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 1130. The expandable tubular member 1140 is further preferably adapted to be removably coupled to the expandable elements 1150 of the anchoring 20 device 1135. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1140 includes one or more anchoring windows 1155 for permitting the expandable elements 1150 of the anchoring device 1135 to engage the wellbore casing 1100 and the expandable tubular member 1140.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1140 further 25 includes a lower section 1160, an intermediate section 1165, and an upper section 1170. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1160 rests upon and is supported by the expansion cone 1130. In a preferred embodiment, the intermediate section 1165 includes the anchoring windows 1155 in order to provide anchoring at an intermediate portion of the expandable tubular member 1140.

30 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1140 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. 35 utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed

on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611,  
5 attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket  
10 no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional  
15 application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,948, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000,  
20 which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S.  
25 provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15)  
30 U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The sealing members 1145 are coupled to the outer surface of the  
35 expandable tubular member 1140. The sealing members 1145 are preferably

adapted to engage and fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 1140 and the wellbore casing 1100. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1115 includes a plurality of sealing members 1145. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 1145 surround and isolate the opening 5 1110.

As illustrated in FIG. 11a, the apparatus 1115 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 1100 with the expandable tubular member 1140 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 1110. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1115 includes a plurality of sealing members 1145 that are positioned above and 10 below the opening 1110. In this manner, the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 1140 optimally fluidly isolates the opening 1110.

As illustrated in FIG. 11b, the apparatus 1115 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 1100 using the anchoring device 1135. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1135 is pressurized and the expandable element 1150 is 15 extended from the anchoring device 1135 through the corresponding anchoring window 1155 in the expandable tubular member 1140 into intimate contact with the wellbore casing 1100. In this manner, the intermediate section 1165 of the expandable tubular member 1140 is removably coupled to the wellbore casing 1100.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then 20 injected into at least a portion of the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 1140 and the wellbore casing 1100. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 1140.

25 As illustrated in FIG. 11c, in a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1130 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the second support member 1125. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1130 radially expands the lower section 1160 of the expandable tubular member 1140 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore or the wellbore 30 casing 1100.

As illustrated in FIG. 11d, in a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1130 is stopped once the expansion cone 1130 contacts the lower portion of the anchoring device 1135.

As illustrated in FIG. 11e, in a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1135 is then decoupled from the wellbore casing 1100 and the expandable tubular member 1140.

As illustrated in FIG. 11f, in a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement 5 of the expansion cone 1130 is then resumed. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device 1135 is also axial displaced. In this manner, the lower section 1160 of the expandable tubular member 1140 is self-anchored to the wellbore casing 1100. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1160 of the expandable tubular member 1140 includes one or more outer rings or other coupling members 10 to facilitate the self-anchoring of the lower section 1160 of the expandable tubular member 1140 to the wellbore or the wellbore casing 1100.

As illustrated in FIGS. 11g, after the expandable tubular member 1140 has been completely radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1130, the 1110 in the wellbore casing 1100 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 1140. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 1100 are 15 optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 1115 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports. In a preferred embodiment, the inside diameter of the radially expanded tubular member 1140 is substantially constant.

20 Referring to FIGS. 12a to 12d, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 12a, a wellbore casing 1200 is positioned within a subterranean formation 1205. The wellbore casing 1200 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore 25 casing 1200 further includes one or more openings 1210 that may have been the result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 1200, or due to a prior perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 1205. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 1210 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the 30 wellbore casing 1200 unless they are sealed off.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 1215 is utilized to seal off the openings 1210 in the wellbore casing 1200. More generally, the apparatus 1215 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 1215 preferably includes a support member 1220, an expandable expansion cone 1225, an expandable tubular member 1235, and one or more sealing members 1240.

The support member 1220 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 1220 is further coupled to the expandable expansion cone 1225. The support member 320 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the expandable expansion cone. The support member 1220 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, 10 coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The expandable expansion cone 1225 is coupled to the support member 1220. The expandable expansion cone 1225 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 1235 when the expandable expansion cone 1225 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 1235. The 15 expandable expansion cone 1225 is further preferably adapted to radially expand at least a portion of the expandable tubular member 1235 when the expandable expansion cone 1225 is controllably radially expanded. The expandable expansion cone 1225 may be any number of conventional commercially available radially expandable expansion cones. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable 20 expansion cone 1225 is provided substantially as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,348,095, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1225 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 25 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application 30 serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 35 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546,

filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000,  
5 which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no.  
10 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on  
15 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no.  
20 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are  
25 incorporated herein by reference.

The expandable tubular member 1235 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 1225. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1235 includes one or more engagement devices 1250 that are adapted to couple with and penetrate the wellbore casing 1200. In this manner, the expandable  
30 tubular member 1235 is optimally coupled to the wellbore casing 1200. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices 1250 include teeth for biting into the surface of the wellbore casing 1200.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1235 further includes a lower section 1255, an intermediate section 1260, and an upper section  
35 1265. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1255 includes the engagement

devices 1250 in order to provide anchoring at an end portion of the expandable tubular member 1235. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the lower and intermediate sections, 1255 and 1260, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 1265 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the lower 5 and intermediate sections, 1255 and 1260, of the expandable tubular member 1235. In an alternative embodiment, the lower section 1255 of the expandable tubular member 1235 is slotted in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the lower section 1255 of the expandable tubular member 1235 using the expandable expansion cone 1225.

10 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1235 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. 15 utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, 20 attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16.1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket 25 no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional 30 application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, 35 which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application

serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. 5. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) 10 U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The sealing members 1240 are preferably coupled to the outer surface of the 15 upper portion 1265 of the expandable tubular member 1235. The sealing members 1240 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 1235 and the wellbore casing 1200. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1215 includes a plurality of sealing members 1240. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 1240 surround 20 and isolate the opening 1210.

As illustrated in FIG. 12a, the apparatus 1215 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 1200 with the expandable tubular member 1235 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 1210. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1215 includes a plurality of sealing members 1240 that are positioned above and 25 below the opening 1210. In this manner, the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 1235 optimally fluidically isolates the opening 1210.

As illustrated in FIG. 12b, the expandable tubular member 1235 of the apparatus 1215 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 1200 by expanding the expandable expansion cone 1225 into contact with the lower section 1255 of the 30 expandable tubular member 1235. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1255 of the expandable tubular member 1235 is radially expanded into intimate contact with the wellbore casing 1200. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices 1250 are thereby coupled to, and at least partially penetrate into, the wellbore casing 1200. In this manner, the lower section 1255 of the expandable 35 tubular member 1235 is optimally coupled to the wellbore casing 1200.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 1235 and the wellbore casing 1200. The compressible cement and/or epoxy may then be permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the 5 radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 1235.

As illustrated in FIG. 12c, the expandable expansion cone 1225 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the support member 1220. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1225 radially 10 expands the expandable tubular member 1235 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore casing 1200.

As illustrated in FIG. 12d, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 1235 has been radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expandable expansion cone 1225, the opening 1210 in the wellbore casing 1200 is 15 sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 1235. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 1200 are optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 1215 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 13a to 13d, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure 20 will now be described. Referring to Fig. 13a, a wellbore casing 1300 is positioned within a subterranean formation 1305. The wellbore casing 1300 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 1300 further includes one or more openings 1310 that may have been the result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 1300, or due to a prior 25 perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 1305. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 1310 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 1300 unless they are sealed off.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 1315 is utilized to seal off the 30 openings 1310 in the wellbore casing 1300. More generally, the apparatus 1315 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 1315 preferably includes a support member 1320, an expansion cone 1325, an expandable tubular member 1335, a heater 1340, and one 35 or more sealing members 1345.

The support member 1320 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 1320 is further coupled to the expansion cone 1325. The support member 1320 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface 5 location to the expansion cone 1325 and heater 1340. The support member 1320 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The expansion cone 1325 is coupled to the support member 1320. The expansion cone 1325 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable 10 tubular member 1335 when the expansion cone 1325 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 1335. The expansion cone 1325 may be any number of conventional commercially available expansion cones.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1325 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent 15 application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional 20 application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 25 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent 30 application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 35 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no.

60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. 5 utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 10 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, 15 attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The expandable tubular member 1335 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 1325. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1335 includes one or more engagement devices 1350 that are adapted to couple 20 with and penetrate the wellbore casing 1300. In this manner, the expandable tubular member 1335 is optimally coupled to the wellbore casing 1300. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices 1350 include teeth for biting into the surface of the wellbore casing 1300.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1335 further 25 includes a lower section 1355, an intermediate section 1360, and an upper section 1365. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1355 includes the engagement devices 1350 in order to provide anchoring at an end portion of the expandable tubular member 1335. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the lower and intermediate sections, 1355 and 1360, are less than the wall thickness of the 30 upper section 1365 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the lower and intermediate sections, 1355 and 1360, of the expandable tubular member 1335.

In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335 includes one or more shape memory metal inserts 1370. In a preferred embodiment, the inserts 1370 are adapted to radially expand the lower 35 section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335 into intimate contact with the

wellbore casing 1300 when heated by the heater 1340. The shape memory metal inserts 1370 may be fabricated from any number of conventional commercially available shape memory alloys such as, for example, NITI or NITINOL using conventional forming processes such as, for example, those described in U.S.

- 5 Patent Nos. 5,312,152, 5,344,506, and 5,718,531, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. In this manner, the shape memory metal inserts 1370 preferably radially expand the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335 when the inserts 1370 are heated to a temperature above their transformation temperature using the heater 1340. In a preferred embodiment, the
- 10 transformation temperature of the inserts 1370 ranges from about 250° F to 450° F. In a preferred embodiment, the material composition of the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335 is further selected to maximize the radial expansion of the lower section 1355 during the transformation process.

In a preferred embodiment, the inserts 1370 are positioned within one or 15 more corresponding recesses 1375 provided in the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335. Alternatively, the inserts 1370 are completely contained within the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1335 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility 20 patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional 25 application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 30 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent 35 application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000,

which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 5 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. 10 utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 15 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12, 1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, 20 attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The heater 1340 is coupled to the support member 1320. The heater 1340 is preferably adapted to controllably generate a localized heat source for elevating the temperature of the inserts 1370. In a preferred embodiment, the heater 1340 25 includes a conventional thermostat control in order to control the operating temperature. The heater 1340 is preferably controlled by a surface control device in a conventional manner.

The sealing members 1345 are preferably coupled to the outer surface of the upper portion 1365 of the expandable tubular member 1335. The sealing members 30 1345 are preferably adapted to engage and fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded expandable tubular member 1335 and the wellbore casing 1300. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1315 includes a plurality of sealing members 1345. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 1345 surround and isolate the opening 1310.

As illustrated in FIG. 13a, the apparatus 1315 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 1300 with the expandable tubular member 1335 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 1310. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus 1315 includes a plurality of sealing members 1345 that are positioned above and 5 below the opening 1310. In this manner, the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 1335 optimally fluidically isolates the opening 1310.

As illustrated in FIG. 13b, in a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1335 of the apparatus 1315 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 1300 by radially expanding the inserts 1370 using the heater 1340. In a preferred 10 embodiment, the expansion of the inserts 1370 causes the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335 to contact the wellbore casing 1300. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices 1350 are thereby coupled to, and at least partially penetrate into, the wellbore casing 1300. In this manner, the lower section 1355 of the expandable tubular member 1335 is optimally coupled to the 15 wellbore casing 1300.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 1335 and the wellbore casing 1300. The compressible cement and/or epoxy may then be permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the 20 radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 1335.

As illustrated in FIG. 13c, the expansion cone 1325 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the support member 1320. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1325 radially expands the expandable 25 tubular member 1335 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore casing 1300.

As illustrated in FIG. 13d, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 1335 has been completely radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1325, the opening 1310 in the wellbore casing 30 1300 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 1335. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 1300 are optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 1315 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 14a to 14g, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus 35 and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure

will now be described. Referring to Fig. 14a, a wellbore casing 1400 is positioned within a subterranean formation 1405. The wellbore casing 1400 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 1400 further includes one or more openings 1410 that may have been the 5 result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 1400, or due to a prior perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 1405. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 1410 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 1400 unless they are sealed off.

10 In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 1415 is utilized to seal off the openings 1410 in the wellbore casing 1400. More generally, the apparatus 1415 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

15 The apparatus 1415 preferably includes a first support member 1420, a second support member 1425, a coupling 1430, an expandable tubular member 1435, an expansion cone 1440, a third support member 1445, and a packer 1450.

20 The first support member 1420 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 1420 is further coupled to the expansion cone 1440. The first support member 1420 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the expansion cone 1440 and the packer 1450. The first support member 1420 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

25 The second support member 1425 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 1425 is further coupled to the coupling 1430. The first support member 1425 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the coupling 1430. The second support member 1425 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or 30 drilling stock material.

The coupling 1430 is coupled to the second support member 1425. The coupling 1430 is further preferably removably coupled to the expandable tubular member 1435. The coupling 1430 may be any number of conventional commercially available passive or actively controlled coupling devices such as, for

example, packers or slips. In a preferred embodiment, the coupling 1430 is a mechanical slip.

The expandable tubular member 1435 is removably coupled to the coupling 1430. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1435 includes 5 one or more engagement devices that are adapted to couple with and penetrate the wellbore casing 1400. In this manner, the expandable tubular member 1435 is optimally coupled to the wellbore casing 1400. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices include teeth for biting into the surface of the wellbore casing 1400. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1435 further 10 includes one or more sealing members on the outside surface of the expandable tubular member 1435 in order to optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 1435 and the wellbore casing 1400.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1435 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility 15 patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional 20 application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 25 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent 30 application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 35 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no.

60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. 5 utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 10 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 15 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The expansion cone 1440 is coupled to the first support member 1420 and the third support member 1445. The expansion cone 1440 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 1435 when the expansion cone 20 1440 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 1435.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1440 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent 25 application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which 30 claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, 35 filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket

no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 5 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent 10 application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application 15 no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional 20 application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

25 The third support member 1445 is preferably coupled to the expansion cone 1440 and the packer 1450. The third support member 1445 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the packer 1450. The third support member 1445 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, 30 coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

35 The packer 1450 is coupled to the third support member 1445. The packer 1450 is further preferably adapted to controllably couple to the wellbore casing 1400. The packer 1450 may be any number of conventional commercially available packer devices. In an alternative embodiment, a bladder, slipped cage assembly or hydraulic slips may be substituted for the packer 1450.

As illustrated in FIG. 14a, the apparatus 1415 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 1400 with the bottom of the expandable tubular member 1435 and the top of the expansion cone 1440 positioned proximate the opening 1410.

As illustrated in FIG. 14b, in a preferred embodiment, the packer 1450 is 5 then anchored to the wellbore casing 1400. In this manner, the expansion cone 1440 is maintained in a substantially stationary position.

As illustrated in FIG. 14c, in a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1435 is then lowered towards the stationary expansion cone 1440. In a preferred embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 14d, the lower end of the expandable 10 tubular member 1435 impacts the expansion cone 1440 and is radially expanded into contact with the wellbore casing 1400. In a preferred embodiment, the lower end of the expandable tubular member 1435 includes one or more engagement devices for engaging the wellbore casing 1400 in order to optimally couple the end of the expandable tubular member 1435 to the wellbore casing 1400.

15 In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 1435 and the wellbore casing 1400. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is 20 provided around the tubular member 1435.

As illustrated in FIG. 14e, in a preferred embodiment, the packer 1450 is decoupled from the wellbore casing 1400.

As illustrated in FIG. 14f, in a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1440 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the first support member 25 1420. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1440 radially expands the expandable tubular member 1435 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore casing 1400. In a preferred embodiment, prior to the initiation of the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1440, the coupling 1430 is decoupled from the expandable tubular member 1435.

30 As illustrated in FIG. 14g, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 1435 has been completely radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1440, the opening 1410 in the wellbore casing 1400 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 1435. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 1400 are optimally provided. More generally, the

apparatus 1415 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 15a to 15d, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 15a, a wellbore casing 1500 is positioned within a subterranean formation 1505. The wellbore casing 1500 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 1500 further includes one or more openings 1510 that may have been the result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 1500, or due to a prior perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean formation 1505. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 1510 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 1500 unless they are sealed off.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 1515 is utilized to seal off the openings 1510 in the wellbore casing 1500. More generally, the apparatus 1515 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 1515 preferably includes a support member 1520, an expandable tubular member 1525, an expansion cone 1530, a coupling 1535, a resilient anchor 1540, and one or more seals 1545.

The support member 1520 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 1520 is further coupled to the expansion cone 1530. The support member 1520 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the resilient anchor 1540. The support member 1520 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The expandable tubular member 1525 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 1530. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1525 includes one or more engagement devices that are adapted to couple with and penetrate the wellbore casing 1500. In this manner, the expandable tubular member 1525 is optimally coupled to the wellbore casing 1500. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices include teeth for biting into the surface of the wellbore casing 1500. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1525 further includes one or more sealing members 1545 on the outside surface of

the expandable tubular member 1525 in order to optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 1525 and the wellbore casing 1500.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1525 includes a lower section 1550, an intermediate section 1555, and an upper section 1560. In a 5 preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate sections, 1550 and 1555, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 1560 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 1525. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 1545 are provided on the outside 10 surface of the upper section 1560 of the expandable tubular member 1525. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 1540 is coupled to the lower section 1550 of the expandable tubular member 1525 in order to optimally anchor the expandable tubular member 1525 to the wellbore casing 1500.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1525 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility 15 patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional 20 application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 25 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent 30 application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 35 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no.

60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The expansion cone 1530 is coupled to the support member 1520 and the coupling 1535. The expansion cone 1530 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 1525 when the expansion cone 1530 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 1525. The expansion cone 1530 may be any number of conventional commercially available expansion cones.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1530 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546,

filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000,  
5. which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no.  
10 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on  
15 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no.  
20 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are  
25 incorporated herein by reference.

The coupling 1535 is preferably coupled to the support member 1520, the expansion cone 1530 and the resilient anchor 1540. The coupling 1535 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the resilient anchor 1535.  
30 The coupling 1535 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material. In a preferred embodiment, the coupling 1535 is decoupled from the resilient anchor 1540 upon initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1530.

The resilient anchor 1540 is preferably coupled to the lower section 1550 of  
35 the expandable tubular member 1525 and the coupling 1535. The resilient anchor

1540 is further preferably adapted to be controllably coupled to the wellbore casing 1500.

Referring to FIGS. 16a and 16b, in a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 1540 includes one or more coiled resilient members 1600 and corresponding releasable coupling devices 1605. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 1540 is maintained in a compressed elastic position that is controllably released thereby causing the resilient anchor 1540 to expand in size thereby releasing the elastic energy stored within the resilient anchor 1540. As illustrated in FIG. 16b, in a preferred embodiment, when the coupling device 1605 is released, the coiled resilient member 1600 at least partially uncoils in the outward radial direction. In a preferred embodiment, at least a portion of the coiled member 1600 is coupled to the lower section 1550 of the expandable tubular member 1525. In a preferred embodiment, the uncoiled member 1600 thereby couples the lower section 1550 of the expandable tubular member 1525 to the wellbore casing 1500.

15. The coiled member 1600 may be fabricated from any number of conventional commercially available resilient materials. In a preferred embodiment, the coiled member 1600 is fabricated from a resilient material such as, for example, spring steel. In a preferred embodiment, the coiled member 1600 is fabricated from memory metals in order to optimally provide control of shapes and stresses.

20. In a preferred embodiment, the releasable coupling device 1605 maintains the coiled member 1600 in a coiled position until the device 1605 is released. The releasable coupling device 1605 may be any number of conventional commercially available releasable coupling devices such as, for example, an explosive bolt.

25. The resilient anchor 1540 may be positioned in any desired orientation. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 1540 is positioned to apply the maximum normal force to the walls of the wellbore casing 1500 after releasing the resilient anchor 1540.

30. In an alternate embodiment, as illustrated in FIGS. 17a and 17b, the resilient anchor 1540 includes a tubular member 1700, one or more resilient anchoring members 1705, one or more corresponding rigid attachments 1710, and one or more corresponding releasable attachments 1715. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchoring members 1705 are maintained in compressed elastic condition by the corresponding rigid and releasable attachments, 1710 and 1715. In a preferred embodiment, when the corresponding releasable attachment 1715 is

released, the corresponding resilient anchoring member 1705 expands, releasing the stored elastic energy, away from the tubular member 1700.

As illustrated in FIG. 17a, one end of each resilient anchoring member 1705 is rigidly attached to the outside surface of the tubular member 1700 by a corresponding rigid attachment 1710. The other end of each resilient anchoring member 1705 is removably attached to the outside surface of the tubular member 1700 by a corresponding releasable attachment 1715. As illustrated in FIG. 17b, in a preferred embodiment, releasing the releasable attachment 1715 permits the resilient energy stored in the resilient anchoring member 1705 to be released thereby causing the resilient anchoring member 1705 to swing radially outward from the tubular member 1700.

The tubular member 1700 may be fabricated from any number of conventional materials.

The resilient anchoring members 1705 may be fabricated from any number of resilient materials. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchoring members 1705 are fabricated from memory metal in order to optimally provide control of shapes and stresses.

The rigid attachments 1710 may be fabricated from any number of conventional commercially available materials. In a preferred embodiment, the rigid attachments 1710 are fabricated from 4140 steel in order to optimally provide high strength.

The releasable attachments 1715 may be fabricated from any number of conventional commercially available devices such as, for example, explosive bolts.

In another alternative embodiment, as illustrated in FIGS. 18a and 18b, the resilient anchor 1540 includes a tubular member 1800, one or more anchoring devices 1805, one or more resilient members 1810, and one or more release devices 1815. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring devices 1805 and resilient members 1810 are maintained in a compressed elastic position by the release devices 1815. As illustrated in FIG. 18b, in a preferred embodiment, when the release devices 1815 are removed, the anchoring devices 1805 and resilient members 1810 are permitted to expand outwardly in the radial direction.

The tubular member 1800 preferably includes one or more openings 1820 for containing the release devices 1815 and for permitting the anchoring devices 1805 to pass through. The tubular member 1800 may be fabricated from any number of conventional commercially available materials. In a preferred

embodiment, the tubular member 1800 is fabricated from 4140 steel in order to optimally provide high strength.

The anchoring devices 1805 are housed within the tubular member 1800. The anchoring devices 1805 are preferably adapted to at least partially extend 5 through the corresponding openings 1820 in the tubular member 1800. The anchoring devices 1805 are preferably adapted to couple to, and at least partially penetrate, the surface of the wellbore 1500. The anchoring devices 1805 may be fabricated from any number of durable hard materials such as, for example, tungsten carbide, machine tool steel, or hard faced steel. In a preferred 10 embodiment, the anchoring devices 1805 are fabricated from machine tool steel in order to optimally provide high strength, hardness, and fracture toughness.

The resilient members 1810 are coupled to the inside surface of the tubular member 1800. The resilient members 1810 are preferably adapted to apply a radial force upon the corresponding anchoring devices 1805. In a preferred embodiment, 15 when the release devices 1815 release the anchoring devices 1805, the resilient members 1810 are preferably adapted to force the anchoring devices at least partially through the corresponding openings 1820 into contact with, to at least partially penetrate, the wellbore casing 1500.

The release devices 1815 are positioned within and coupled to the openings 20 1820 in the tubular member 1800. The release devices 1815 are preferably adapted to hold the corresponding anchoring devices 1805 within the tubular member 1800 until released by a control signal provided from a surface, or other, location. The release devices 1815 may be any number of conventional commercially available release devices. In a preferred embodiment, the release devices 1815 are pressure 25 activated in order to optimally provide ease of operation.

As illustrated in FIG. 15a, the apparatus 1515 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 1500 with the expandable tubular member 1525 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 1510.

As illustrated in FIG. 15b, in a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 30 1540 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 1500. In this manner, the lower section 1550 of the expandable tubular member 1525 is anchored to the wellbore casing 1500. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 1540 is anchored by a control and/or electrical power signal transmitted from a surface location.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then 35 injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular

member 1525 and the wellbore casing 1500. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 1525.

- 5 As illustrated in FIG. 15c, in a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 1530 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the support member 1520. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1530 radially expands the expandable tubular member 1525 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore casing 1500.
- 10 As illustrated in FIG. 15d, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 1525 has been completely radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 1530, the opening 1510 in the wellbore casing 1500 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 1525. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 1500 are optimally provided. More generally, the
15. apparatus 1515 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 19a, 19b and 19c, an alternative embodiment of an expandable tubular member 1900 for use in the apparatus 1515 will now be described. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 1900 includes a tubular body 1905, one or more resilient panels 1910, one or more corresponding engagement members 1915, and a release member 1920. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient panels 1910 are adapted to expand in the radial direction after being released by the release member 1920. In this manner, the expandable tubular member 1900 is anchored to a preexisting structure such as, for

- 20 example, a wellbore casing, an open hole wellbore section, a pipeline, or a structural support.
- 25

The tubular member 1905 is coupled to the resilient panels 1910. The tubular member 1905 may be any number of conventional commercially available expandable tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular member 1905 is an expandable casing in order to optimally provide high strength.

The resilient panels 1910 are coupled to the tubular member 1905. The resilient panels 1910 are further releasably coupled to the release member 1920. The resilient panels 1910 are preferably adapted to house the expansion cone 1530. The resilient panels 1910 are preferably adapted to extend to the position 35 1925 upon being released by the release member 1920. In a preferred

embodiment, the resilient panels 1910 are coupled to the tubular member 1905 by welding in order to optimally provide high strength. The resilient panels 1910 may be fabricated from any number of conventional commercially available resilient materials. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient panels 1910 are fabricated from 5 spring steel in order to optimally store elastic radially directed energy.

The engagement members 1915 are coupled to corresponding resilient panels. The engagement members 1915 are preferably adapted to engage, and at least partially penetrate, the wellbore casing 1500, or other preexisting structure.

The release member 1920 is releasably coupled to the resilient panels 1910.

10 The release member 1920 is preferably adapted to controllably release the resilient panels 1910 from their initial strained positions in order to permit the resilient panels 1910 to expand to their expanded positions 1925. In a preferred embodiment, the release member 1920 is releasably coupled to the coupling 1535. In this manner, electrical and/or control and/or hydraulic signals are communicated to and/or from 15 the release member 1920. The release member 1920 may be any number of conventional commercially available release devices.

Referring to FIGS. 20a to 20d, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 20a, a wellbore casing 2000 is positioned 20 within a subterranean formation 2005. The wellbore casing 2000 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction. The wellbore casing 2000 further includes one or more openings 2010 that may have been the result of unintentional damage to the wellbore casing 2000, or due to a prior perforation or fracturing operation performed upon the surrounding subterranean 25 formation 2005. As will be recognized by persons having ordinary skill in the art, the openings 2010 can adversely affect the subsequent operation and use of the wellbore casing 2000 unless they are sealed off.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 2015 is utilized to seal off the 30 openings 2010 in the wellbore casing 2000. More generally, the apparatus 2015 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 2015 preferably includes a support member 2020, an expandable tubular member 2025, an expansion cone 2030, a coupling 2035, a resilient anchor 2040, and one or more seals 2045.

The support member 2020 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 2020 is further coupled to the expansion cone 2030. The support member 2020 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface 5 location to the anchor 2040. The support member 2020 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The expandable tubular member 2025 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 2030. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 10, 2025 includes one or more engagement devices that are adapted to couple with and penetrate the wellbore casing 2000. In this manner, the expandable tubular member 2025 is optimally coupled to the wellbore casing 2000. In a preferred embodiment, the engagement devices include teeth for biting into the surface of the wellbore casing 2000. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 15, 2025 further includes one or more sealing members 2045 on the outside surface of the expandable tubular member 2025 in order to optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 2025 and the wellbore casing 2000.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2025 includes a lower section 2050, an intermediate section 2055, and an upper section 2060. In a 20 preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate sections, 2050 and 2055, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 2060 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 2025. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members 2045 are provided on the outside surface of the upper section 2060 of the expandable tubular member 2025. In a 25 preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor 2040 is coupled to the lower section 2050 of the expandable tubular member 2025 in order to optimally anchor the expandable tubular member 2025 to the wellbore casing 2000.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2025 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility 30 patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional 35 application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application

serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 5 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent 10 application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,841, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 15 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 20 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are 30 incorporated herein by reference.

The expansion cone 2030 is preferably coupled to the support member 2020 and the coupling 2035. The expansion cone 2030 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 2025 when the expansion cone 2030 is 35 axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 2025.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2030 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which 5 claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, 10 filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 15 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent 20 application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15)

U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

5        The coupling 2035 is preferably coupled to the support member 2020, the expansion cone 2030, and the anchor 2040. The coupling 2035 is preferably adapted to convey pressurized fluidic materials and/or electrical current and/or communication signals from a surface location to the anchor 2035. The coupling 2035 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided  
10      wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material. In a preferred embodiment, the coupling 2035 is decoupled from the anchor 2040 upon initiating the axial displacement of the expansion cone 2030.

15      The anchor 2040 is preferably coupled to the lower section 2050 of the expandable tubular member 2025 and the coupling 2035. The anchor 2040 is further preferably adapted to be controllably coupled to the wellbore casing 2000.

20      Referring to FIGS. 21a and 21b, in a preferred embodiment, the anchor 2040 includes a housing 2100, one or more spikes 2105, and one or more corresponding actuators 2110. In a preferred embodiment, the spikes 2105 are outwardly extended by the corresponding actuators 2110. In an alternative embodiment, the spikes 2105 are outwardly actuated by displacing the apparatus 2015 upwardly. In another alternative embodiment, the spikes 2105 are outwardly extended by placing a quantity of fluidic material onto the spikes 2105.

25      The housing 2100 is coupled to the lower section 2050 of the expandable tubular member 2025, the spikes 2105, and the actuators 2110. The housing 2100 is further preferably coupled to the coupling 2035. In a preferred embodiment, the housing 2100 is adapted to convey electrical, communication, and/or hydraulic signals from the coupling 2035 to the actuators 2110.

30      The spikes 2105 are preferably movably coupled to the housing 2100 and the corresponding actuators 2110. The spikes 2105 are preferably adapted to pivot relative to the housing 2100. The spikes 2105 are further preferably adapted to extend outwardly in a radial direction to engage, and at least partially penetrate, the wellbore casing 2000, or other preexisting structure such as, for example, the wellbore. Each of the spikes 2105 further preferably include a concave upwardly facing surface 2115. In a preferred embodiment, the placement of a quantity of fluidic material such as, for example, a barite plug or a flex plug, onto the surfaces  
35

2115 causes the spikes 2105 to pivot outwardly away from the housing 2100 to engage the wellbore casing 2000, or other preexisting structure such as, for example, the wellbore. Alternatively, the upward displacement of the apparatus 2015 causes the spikes 2105 to pivot outwardly away from the housing 2100 to 5 engage the wellbore casing 2000, or other preexisting structure such as, for example, the wellbore.

The actuators 2110 are preferably coupled to the housing 2100 and the corresponding spikes 2105. The actuators 2110 are preferably adapted to apply a force to the corresponding spikes 2105 sufficient to pivot the corresponding spikes 10 2105 outwardly and away from the housing 2100. The actuators 2110 may be any number of conventional commercially available actuators such as, for example, a spring, an electric or hydraulic motor, a hydraulic piston/cylinder. In a preferred embodiment, the actuators 2100 are hydraulic pistons in order to optimally provide ease of operation. In an alternative embodiment, the actuators 2110 are omitted 15 and the spikes are pivotally coupled to the housing 2100.

Referring to FIGS. 22a, 22b, and 22c, in an alternative embodiment, the anchor 2040 includes the housing 2100, one or more petal baskets 2205, and one or more corresponding actuators 2110. In a preferred embodiment, the petal baskets 2205 are outwardly extended by the corresponding actuators 2110. In an 20 alternative embodiment, the petal baskets 2205 are outwardly actuated by displacing the apparatus 2015 upwardly. In another alternative embodiment, the petal baskets 2205 are outwardly extended by placing a quantity of fluidic material onto the petal baskets 2205.

The housing 2100 is coupled to the lower section 2050 of the expandable 25 tubular member 2025, the petal baskets 2205, and the actuators 2110.

The petal baskets 2205 are preferably movably coupled to the housing 2100 and the corresponding actuators 2110. The petal baskets 2205 are preferably adapted to pivot relative to the housing 2100. The petal baskets 2205 are further preferably adapted to extend outwardly in a radial direction to engage, and at least 30 partially penetrate, the wellbore casing 2000, or other preexisting structure. As illustrated in FIG. 22c, each of the petal baskets 2205 further preferably include a concave upwardly facing surface 2215. In a preferred embodiment, the placement of a quantity of fluidic material such as, for example, a barite plug or a flex plug, onto the surfaces 2215 causes the petal baskets 2205 to pivot outwardly away from the 35 housing 2100 to engage the wellbore casing 2000, or other preexisting structure.

Alternatively, the weight of the fluidic materials placed onto the petal baskets 2205 is sufficient to anchor the expandable tubular member 2025. Alternatively, the upward displacement of the apparatus 2015 causes the petal baskets 2205 to pivot outwardly away from the housing 2100 to engage the wellbore casing 2000, or other preexisting structure.

5 The actuators 2110 are preferably coupled to the housing 2100 and the corresponding petal baskets 2205. The actuators 2110 are preferably adapted to apply a force to the corresponding petal baskets 2205 sufficient to pivot the corresponding petal baskets 2205 outwardly and away from the housing 2100. In 10 an alternative embodiment, the actuators 2110 are omitted and the petal baskets are pivotally coupled to the housing 2100.

In an alternative embodiment, the anchor 2040 includes one or more spikes 2105 and one or more petal baskets 2205.

15 As illustrated in FIG. 20a, the apparatus 2015 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 2000 with the expandable tubular member 2025 positioned in opposing relation to the opening 2010.

20 As illustrated in FIG. 20b, in a preferred embodiment, the anchor 2040 is then anchored to the wellbore casing 2000. In this manner, the lower section 2050 of the expandable tubular member 2025 is anchored to the wellbore casing 2000 or the wellbore casing. In a preferred embodiment, the anchor 2040 is anchored by a 25 control and/or electrical power signal transmitted from a surface location to the actuators 2110 of the anchor 2040. In an alternative embodiment, the anchor 2040 is anchored to the wellbore casing 2000 by upwardly displacing the apparatus 2015. In an alternative embodiment, the anchor 2040 is anchored to the wellbore casing 30 2000 by placing a quantity of a fluidic material such, for example, a barite plug or a flex plug, onto the spikes 2105 or petal baskets 2205 of the anchor 2040. In an alternative embodiment, the anchor 2040 is omitted, and the apparatus 2015 is anchored by placing a quantity of a fluidic material such, for example, a barite plug or a flex plug, onto at least the lower and/or the intermediate sections, 2050 and 3055, of the expandable tubular member 2025.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 2025 and the wellbore casing 2000. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial

expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 2025.

As illustrated in FIG. 20c, in a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2030 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the support member 5 2020. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 2030 radially expands the expandable tubular member 2025 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore casing 2000.

As illustrated in FIG. 20d, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 2025 has been completely radially expanded by the axial 10 displacement of the expansion cone 2030, the opening 2010 in the wellbore casing 2000 is sealed off by the radially expanded tubular member 1435. In this manner, repairs to the wellbore casing 2000 are optimally provided. More generally, the apparatus 2015 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

15 Referring to FIGS. 23a to 23e, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 23a, a wellbore casing 2300 and an open hole wellbore section 2305 are positioned within a subterranean formation 2310. The wellbore casing 2300 and the open hole wellbore section 2305 may be 20 positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to the horizontal direction.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 2320 is utilized to form a new section of wellbore casing within the open hole wellbore section 2305. More generally, the apparatus 2320 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

25 The apparatus 2320 preferably includes a support member 2325, an expandable tubular member 2330, an expansion cone 2335, one or more upper sealing members 2340, and one or more sealing members 2345.

The support member 2325 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 2325 is further coupled to the expansion cone 2335.

30 The support member 2325 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The expandable tubular member 2330 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 2335. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2025 further includes one or more upper and lower sealing members, 2340 and 35 2345, on the outside surface of the expandable tubular member 2330 in order to

optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 2330 and the wellbore casing 2300 and the open hole wellbore section 2305.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2025 further includes a lower section 2350, an intermediate section 2355, and an upper section 5 2360. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate sections, 2350 and 2355, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 2360 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 2330. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 2350 of the expandable tubular member 2330 includes one or more slots 2365 adapted to 10 permit a fluidic sealing material to penetrate the lower section 2350.

In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2330 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent 15 application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which 20 claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, 25 filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 30 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent 35 application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000,

which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

15 The expansion cone 2335 is preferably coupled to the support member 2325. The expansion cone 2335 is further preferably removably coupled to the expandable tubular member 2330. The expansion cone 2335 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 2330 when the expansion cone 2335 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 2330.

20 In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2335 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of

U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The upper sealing member 2340 is coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2360 of the expandable tubular member 2330. The upper sealing member 2340 is preferably adapted to fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2360 of the expandable tubular member 2330 and the wellbore casing 2300. The upper sealing member 2340 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the upper sealing member 2340 is a viton rubber in order to optimally provide load carrying and pressure sealing capacity.

The lower sealing member 2345 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2360 of the expandable tubular member 2330. The lower sealing member 2340 is preferably adapted to fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2360 of the expandable tubular member 2330

and the open hole wellbore section 2305. The lower sealing member 2345 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the lower sealing member 2345 is viton rubber in order to optimally provide load carrying and sealing capacity.

5 As illustrated in FIG. 23a, the apparatus 2320 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 2300 and the open hole wellbore section 2305, with the expandable tubular member 2330 positioned in overlapping relation to the wellbore casing 2300.

As illustrated in FIG. 23b, in a preferred embodiment, a quantity of a 10 hardenable fluidic sealing material 2365 is then injected into the open hole wellbore section 2305 proximate to the lower section 2350 of the expandable tubular member 2330. The sealing material 2365 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing materials such as, for example, cement and/or epoxy resin. In a preferred embodiment, the hardenable fluidic sealing material 2365 at least partially 15 enters the slots provided in the lower section 2350 of the expandable tubular member 2330.

As illustrated in FIG. 23c, the hardenable fluidic sealing material 2365 is 20 preferably then permitted to at least partially cure. In this manner, the lower section 2350 of the expandable tubular member 2330 is anchored to the open hole wellbore section 2305.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is then 25 injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 2330 and the wellbore casing 2300. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is 30 provided around the tubular member 2330.

As illustrated in FIG. 23d, in a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2335 is then axially displaced by applying an axial force to the support member 2325. In a preferred embodiment, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 30 2335 radially expands the expandable tubular member 2330 into intimate contact with the walls of the wellbore casing 2300.

As illustrated in FIG. 23e, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 2330 has been completely radially expanded by the axial displacement of the expansion cone 2335, a new section of wellbore casing is 35 formed that preferably includes the radially expanded tubular member 2330 and an

outer annular layer of a fluidic sealing material. More generally, the apparatus 2320 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 24a to 24c, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure 5 will now be described. Referring to Fig. 24a, a wellbore casing 2400 and an open hole wellbore section 2405 are positioned within a subterranean formation 2410. The wellbore casing 2400 and the open hole wellbore section 2405 may be positioned in any orientation, from the vertical direction to approximately the horizontal direction.

10 In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 2420 is utilized to form a new section of wellbore casing within the open hole wellbore section 2405. More generally, the apparatus 2420 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

15 The apparatus 2420 preferably includes a support member 2425, an expandable tubular member 2430, an expansion cone 2435, a coupling 2440, a packer 2445, a mass 2450, one or more upper sealing members 2455, and one or more sealing members 2460.

20 The support member 2425 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 2425 is further coupled to the expansion cone 2435. The support member 2425 is preferably adapted to convey electrical, communication, and/or hydraulic signals to and/or from the packer 2445. The support member 2425 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

25 The expandable tubular member 2430 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 2435 and the packer 2445. The expandable tubular member 2430 is further preferably coupled to the mass 2450. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2430 further includes one or more upper and lower sealing members, 2455 and 2460, on the outside surface of the expandable tubular member 2430 in order to optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 2430 and the wellbore casing 2400 and the open hole wellbore section 2405.

30 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2430 further includes a lower section 2465, an intermediate section 2470, and an upper section 2430. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate sections, 2465 and 2470, are less than the wall thickness of the upper

section 2475 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 2430. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 2465 of the expandable tubular member 2430 is coupled to the mass 2450.

5 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2430 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following:

The expansion cone 2435 is preferably coupled to the support member 2425 and the coupling 2440. The expansion cone 2435 is further preferably removably coupled to the expandable tubular member 2430. The expansion cone 2435 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 2430 when 10 the expansion cone 2435 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 2430.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2435 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 15 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application 20 serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, 30 which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 35 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent

application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 5 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 10 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 10 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are 15 incorporated herein by reference.

The coupling 2440 is preferably coupled to the support member 2425 and the expansion cone 2435. The coupling 2440 is preferably adapted to convey electrical, communication, and/or hydraulic signals to and/or from the packer 2445. The coupling 2440 may be any number of conventional support members such as, 20 for example, commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

The packer 2445 is coupled to the coupling 2440. The packer 2445 is further removably coupled to the lower section 2465 of the expandable wellbore casing 2430. The packer 2445 is preferably adapted to provide sufficient frictional force to 25 support the lower section 2465 of the expandable wellbore casing 2430 and the mass 2450. The packer 2445 may be any number of conventional commercially available packers. In a preferred embodiment, the packer 2445 is an RTTS packer available from Halliburton Energy Services in order to optimally provide multiple sets and releases. In an alternative embodiment, hydraulic slips may be substituted for, 30 or used to supplement, the packer 2445.

The mass 2450 is preferably coupled to the lower section 2465 of the expandable tubular member 2430. The mass 2450 is preferably selected to provide a tensile load on the lower section 2465 of the expandable tubular member 2430 that ranges from about 50 to 100 % of the yield point of the upper section 2475 of 35 the expandable tubular member 2430. In this manner, when the packer 2445 is

released, the axial force provided by the mass 2450 optimally radially expands and extrudes the expandable tubular member 2430 off of the expansion cone 2435.

The upper sealing member 2455 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2475 of the expandable tubular member 2430. The upper sealing member 2455 is preferably adapted to fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2475 of the expandable tubular member 2430 and the wellbore casing 2400. The upper sealing member 2455 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the upper sealing member 2455 is viton rubber in order to optimally provide load carrying and pressure sealing capacity.

The lower sealing member 2460 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2475 of the expandable tubular member 2430. The lower sealing member 2460 is preferably adapted to fluidly seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2475 of the expandable tubular member 2430 and the open hole wellbore section 2405. The lower sealing member 2460 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the lower sealing member 2460 is viton rubber in order to optimally provide lead bearing and sealing capacity.

As illustrated in FIG. 24a, the apparatus 2420 is preferably positioned within the wellbore casing 2400 and the open hole wellbore section 2405 with the expandable tubular member 2430 positioned in overlapping relation to the wellbore casing 2400. In a preferred embodiment, the weight of the mass 2450 is supported by the support member 2425, the expansion cone 2435, the coupling 2440, the packer 2445, and the lower section 2465 of the expandable tubular member 2430. In this manner, the intermediate section 2470 of the expandable tubular member 2430 preferably does not support any of the weight of the mass 2450.

As illustrated in FIG. 24b, in a preferred embodiment, the packer 2445 is then released from connection with the lower section 2465 of the expandable tubular member 2430. In this manner, the mass 2450 is preferably now supported by the support member 2425, expansion cone 2435, and the lower and intermediate sections, 2465 and 2470, of the expandable tubular member 2430. In a preferred embodiment, the weight of the mass 2450 then causes the expandable tubular member 2430 to be radially expanded by, and extruded off of, the expansion cone 2435. In a preferred embodiment, during the extrusion process, the position of the

support member 2425 is adjusted to ensure an overlapping relation between the expandable tubular member 2430 and the wellbore casing 2400.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 2430 and the wellbore casing 2400 before and/or during the extrusion process. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then preferably permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 2430.

As illustrated in FIG. 24c, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 2430 has been completely extruded off of the expansion cone 2435, a new section of wellbore casing is formed that preferably includes the radially expanded tubular member 2430 and an outer annular layer of a fluidic sealing material. More generally, the apparatus 2420 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

In an alternative embodiment, the mass 2450 is positioned on top of the upper section 2475 of the tubular member 2430. In a preferred embodiment, the mass 2450 is fabricated from a thick walled tubular member that is concentric with respect to the support member 2425, and also rests on top of the upper section 2475 of the tubular member 2430. In this manner, when the expansion cone 2435 exits the tubular member 2430, the expansion cone will carry the mass 2450 out of the wellbore 2405.

Referring to FIGS. 25a to 25c, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 25a, a wellbore casing 2500 and an open hole wellbore section 2505 are positioned within a subterranean formation 2510. The wellbore casing 2500 and the open hole wellbore section 2505 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to approximately the horizontal direction.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 2520 is utilized to form a new section of wellbore casing within the open hole wellbore section 2505. More generally, the apparatus 2520 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 2520 preferably includes a support member 2525, an expandable tubular member 2530, an expansion cone 2535, a chamber 2440, an

end plate 2545, one or more upper sealing members 2555, and one or more sealing members 2560.

The support member 2525 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 2525 is further coupled to the expansion cone 2535.

5 The support member 2525 is preferably adapted to convey fluidic materials to and/or from the chamber 2540. The support member 2525 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

10 The expandable tubular member 2530 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 2535. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2530 further includes one or more upper and lower sealing members, 2555 and 2560, on the outside surface of the expandable tubular member 2530 in order to optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 2530 and the wellbore casing 2500 and the open hole wellbore section 2505.

15 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2530 further includes a lower section 2565, an intermediate section 2570, and an upper section 2530. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate sections, 2565 and 2570, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 2575 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable 20 tubular member 2530.

In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 2565 of the expandable tubular member 2530 further includes the chamber 2540 and the end plate 2545.

25 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2530 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of 30 the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 35

25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,108, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The expansion cone 2535 is preferably coupled to the support member 2525. The expansion cone 2535 is further preferably removably coupled to the expandable tubular member 2530. The expansion cone 2535 is preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 2530 when the expansion cone 2535 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 2530. The expansion cone 2535 is further preferably adapted to convey fluidic materials to and/or from the chamber 2540.

In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2535 is provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent

application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed 5 on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, 10 attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of 15 U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) 20 U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application 25 serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 30 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, 35 filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228,

attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The chamber 2540 is defined by the interior portion of the lower section 2565 of the expandable tubular member 2530 below the expansion cone 2535 and above 5 the end plate 2545. The chamber 2540 is preferably adapted to contain a quantity of a fluidic materials having a higher density than the fluidic materials outside of the expandable tubular member 2530..

The upper sealing member 2555 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2575 of the expandable tubular member 2530. The upper 10 sealing member 2555 is preferably adapted to fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2575 of the expandable tubular member 2530 and the wellbore casing 2500. The upper sealing member 2555 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the upper sealing member 2555 is viton rubber in order to optimally 15 provide load carrying and pressure sealing capacity.

The lower sealing member 2560 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2575 of the expandable tubular member 2530. The lower sealing member 2560 is preferably adapted to fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2575 of the expandable tubular member 2530 20 and the open hole wellbore section 2505. The lower sealing member 2560 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the lower sealing member 2560 is viton rubber in order to optimally provide load carrying and pressure sealing capacity.

As illustrated in FIG. 25a, the apparatus 2520 is preferably positioned within 25 the wellbore casing 2500 and the open hole wellbore section 2505 with the expandable tubular member 2530 positioned in overlapping relation to the wellbore casing 2500.

As illustrated in FIG. 25b, a quantity of a fluidic material 2580 having a density greater than the density of the fluidic material within the region 2585 outside 30 of the expandable tubular member 2530 is injected into the chamber 2540. In a preferred embodiment, the difference in hydrostatic pressure between the chamber 2540 and the region 2585, due to the differences in fluid densities of these regions, causes the expandable tubular member 2530 to be radially expanded by, and extruded off of, the expansion cone 2535. In a preferred embodiment, during the 35 extrusion process, the position of the support member 2525 is adjusted to ensure an

overlapping relation between the expandable tubular member 2530 and the wellbore casing 2500. In a preferred embodiment, the quantity of the fluidic material 2580 initially injected into the chamber 2540 is subsequently increased as the size of the chamber 2540 increases during the extrusion process. In this manner, high pressure pumping equipment is typically not required, or the need for it is at least minimized. Rather, in an exemplary embodiment, a column of the fluidic material 2580 is maintained within the support member 2525.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 2530 and the wellbore casing 2500 before and/or during the extrusion process. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then preferably permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 2530.

As illustrated in FIG. 25c, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 2530 has been completely extruded off of the expansion cone 2535, a new section of wellbore casing is formed that preferably includes the radially expanded tubular member 2530 and an outer annular layer of a fluidic sealing material. More generally, the apparatus 2520 is used to repair or form wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring to FIGS. 26a to 26c, an alternative embodiment of an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure will now be described. Referring to Fig. 26a, a wellbore casing 2600 and an open hole wellbore section 2605 are positioned within a subterranean formation 2610. The wellbore casing 2600 and the open hole wellbore section 2605 may be positioned in any orientation from the vertical direction to approximately the horizontal direction.

In a preferred embodiment, an apparatus 2620 is utilized to form a new section of wellbore casing within the open hole wellbore section 2605. More generally, the apparatus 2620 is preferably utilized to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

The apparatus 2620 preferably includes a support member 2625, an expandable tubular member 2630, an expansion cone 2635, a slip joint 2640, an end plate 2545, a chamber 2650, one or more slip members 2655, one or more

sealing members 2670, one or more upper sealing members 2675, and one or more lower sealing members 2680.

The support member 2625 is preferably adapted to be coupled to a surface location. The support member 2625 is further coupled to the expansion cone 2635.

5 The support member 2625 is preferably adapted to convey fluidic materials to and/or from the chamber 2640. The support member 2625 may, for example, be conventional commercially available slick wire, braided wire, coiled tubing, or drilling stock material.

10 The expandable tubular member 2630 is removably coupled to the expansion cone 2635. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2630 further includes one or more upper and lower sealing members, 2675 and 2680, on the outside surface of the expandable tubular member 2630 in order to optimally seal the interface between the expandable tubular member 2630 and the wellbore casing 2600 and the open hole wellbore section 2605.

15 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2630 further includes a lower section 2685, an intermediate section 2690, and an upper section 2695. In a preferred embodiment, the wall thicknesses of the lower and intermediate sections, 2685 and 2690, are less than the wall thickness of the upper section 2695 in order to optimally facilitate the radial expansion of the expandable 20 tubular member 2630.

25 In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 2685 of the expandable tubular member 2630 houses the slip joint 2640, the end plate 2645, the slips 2655, and the sealing members 2670. In a preferred embodiment, the interior portion of the lower section 2685 of the expandable tubular member 2630 below the expansion cone 2635 and above the end plate defines the chamber 2650. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 2685 of the expandable tubular member 2630 further includes one or more of the anchoring devices described above with reference to FIGS. 1a to 25c.

30 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2630 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed 35 on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional

application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,611, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,480, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12,1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The expansion cone 2635 is preferably coupled to the support member 2625 and the slip joint 2640. The expansion cone 2635 is further preferably removably coupled to the expandable tubular member 2630. The expansion cone 2635 is

preferably adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member 2630 when the expansion cone 2635 is axially displaced relative to the expandable tubular member 2630. The expansion cone 2635 is further preferably adapted to convey fluidic materials to and/or from the chamber 2650.

- 5        In a preferred embodiment, the expansion cone 2635 is further provided substantially as disclosed in one or more of the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S.
- 10      utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,811,
- 15      attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket
- 20      no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional
- 25      application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000,
- 30      which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 4/26/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on

7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,871, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) 5 U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

10 The slip joint 2640 is coupled to the expansion cone 2635 and the end plate 2645. The slip joint 2640 is preferably adapted to permit the end plate 2645 to be axially displaced relative to the expansion cone 2635. In this manner, the size of the chamber 2650 is variable. The slip joint 2640 may be any number of conventional commercially available slip joints modified in accordance with the teachings of the present disclosure.

15 The slip joint 2640 preferably includes an upper member 2640a, a resilient member 2640b, and a lower member 2640c. The upper member 2640a is coupled to the expansion cone 2635 and the resilient member 2640b. The upper member 2640a is movably coupled to the lower member 2640b. The upper member 2640a preferably includes one or more fluid passages 2640aa that permit the passage of 20 fluidic materials. The lower member 2640b is coupled to the end plate 2645 and the resilient member 2640b. The lower member 2640b is movably coupled to the upper member 2640a. The lower member 2640b preferably includes one or more fluid passages 2640ba that permit the passage of fluidic materials. The resilient member 2640c is coupled between the upper and lower members, 2640a and 2640b. The 25 resilient member 2640c is preferably adapted to apply an upward axial force to the end plate 2645.

30 The end plate 2645 is coupled to the slip joint 2640, the slips 2655, and the sealing members 2670. The end plate 2645 is preferably adapted to seal off a portion of the interior of the lower section 2685 of the expandable tubular member 2630. The end plate 2645 is further adapted to define, in combination with the expandable tubular member 2630, and the expansion cone 2635, the chamber 2650.

35 The chamber 2650 is defined by the interior portion of the lower section 2685 of the expandable tubular member 2630 below the expansion cone 2635 and above the end plate 2645. In a preferred embodiment, the pressurization of the chamber

2650 causes the expansion cone 2635 to be axially displaced and thereby radially expand the expandable tubular member 2630. The chamber 2650 is preferably adapted to move upwardly within the expandable tubular member 2630 as the expansion cone 2635 and end plate 2645 are axially displaced within the 5 expandable tubular member 2630.

The slips 2655 are coupled to the end plate 2645. The slips 2655 are preferably adapted to permit the end plate 2645 to be displaced in the upward axial direction; but prevent axial displacement of the end plate 2645 in the downward direction. In this manner, the chamber 2650 is pressurized by injecting fluidic 10 materials into the chamber 2650. Because the end plate 2645 is maintained in a substantially stationary position, relative to the expandable tubular member 2630, during the injection of pressurized fluidic materials into the chamber 2650, the pressurization of the chamber 2650 preferably axially displaces the expansion cone 2635. In a preferred embodiment, when the slip joint 2640 is fully extended, the slip 15 joint 2640 then displaces the end plate 2645 in the upward axial direction. In a preferred embodiment, when the spring force of the elastic member 2640c of the slip joint 2640 is greater than the fluidic pressurization force within the chamber 2650, the end plate 2645 is displaced in the upward axial direction.

The sealing members 2670 are coupled to the end plate 2645. The sealing 20 members 2670 are further preferably sealingly coupled to the interior walls of the expandable tubular member 2630. In this manner, the chamber 2650 is optimally pressurized during operation of the apparatus 2620.

The upper sealing member 2675 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2695 of the expandable tubular member 2630. The upper 25 sealing member 2675 is preferably adapted to fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2695 of the expandable tubular member 2630 and the wellbore casing 2600. The upper sealing member 2675 may be any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the upper sealing member 2675 is viton rubber in order to optimally 30 provide load carrying and pressure sealing capacity.

The lower sealing member 2680 is preferably coupled to the outside surface of the upper section 2695 of the expandable tubular member 2630. The lower sealing member 2680 is preferably adapted to fluidically seal the interface between the radially expanded upper section 2695 of the expandable tubular member 2630 35 and the open hole wellbore section 2605. The lower sealing member 2680 may be

any number of conventional commercially available sealing members. In a preferred embodiment, the lower sealing member 2680 is viton rubber in order to optimally provide load carrying and pressure sealing capacity.

As illustrated in FIG. 26a, the apparatus 2620 is preferably positioned within

5 the wellbore casing 2600 and the open hole wellbore section 2605 with the expandable tubular member 2630 positioned in overlapping relation to the wellbore casing 2600. In a preferred embodiment, the lower section 2685 of the expandable tubular member 2630 is then anchored to the open hole wellbore section 2605 using one or more of the apparatus and methods described above with reference to FIGS.

10 1a to 25c.

As illustrated in FIG. 26b, the radial expansion of the expandable tubular member 2630 is then initiated by: (1) applying an upward axial force to the expansion cone 2635; and/or (2) pressurizing the chamber 2650 by injecting a pressurized fluidic material into the chamber 2650.

15 In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2630 is radially expanded by applying an upward axial force to the expansion cone 2635. In a preferred embodiment, once the slip joint 2640 is fully extended, the end plate 2645 is then axially displaced in the upward direction. In this manner, the end plate 2645 follows the expansion cone 2635. In a preferred embodiment, the chamber 2650 is

20 pressurized when the frictional forces exceed a predetermined value. In this manner, the axial displacement of the expansion cone 2635 is provided by applying an axial force that is selectively supplemented by pressurizing the chamber 2650.

In an alternative embodiment, a compressible cement and/or epoxy is injected into the annular space between the unexpanded portion of the tubular member 2630 and the wellbore casing 2600 before and/or during the extrusion process. The compressible cement and/or epoxy is then preferably permitted to at least partially cure prior to the initiation of the radial expansion process. In this manner, an annular structural support and fluidic seal is provided around the tubular member 2630.

30 As illustrated in FIG. 26c, in a preferred embodiment, after the expandable tubular member 2630 has been completely extruded off of the expansion cone 2635, a new section of wellbore casing is formed that preferably includes the radially expanded tubular member 2630 and an outer annular layer of a fluidic sealing material. More generally, the apparatus 2620 is used to repair or form wellbore

35 casings, pipelines, and structural supports.

Referring initially to FIG. 27, a preferred method 2700 of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure includes the steps of: (1) coupling the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by axially displacing an expansion cone; and (2) radially expanding the expandable tubular by 5 applying direct radial pressure.

In a preferred embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 28, in step 2705, an expandable tubular member 2805 is coupled to a preexisting wellbore casing 2810 positioned within a subterranean formation 2815. In a preferred embodiment, the wellbore casing 2810 further includes an outer annular layer 2820 of a fluidic sealing 10 material such as, for example, cement. The expandable tubular member 2805 may be coupled to the preexisting wellbore casing 2810 using any number of conventional commercially available methods for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure such as, for example, pulling an expansion cone through a tubular member, or pushing an expansion cone through a tubular member 15 using a pressurized fluidic material. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member 2805 is coupled to the preexisting structure 2810 using one or more of the apparatus and methods disclosed in the following: (1) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/454,139, attorney docket no. 25791.3.02, filed on 12/3/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent 20 application no. 60/111,293, attorney docket no. 25791.3, filed on 12/7/1998; (2) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/510,913, attorney docket no. 25791.7.02, filed on 2/23/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/121,702, filed on 2/25/1999; (3) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/502,350, attorney docket no. 25791.8.02, filed on 2/10/2000, which 25 claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/119,811, attorney docket no. 25791.8; (4) U.S. utility patent application serial no. 09/440,338, attorney docket no. 25791.9.02, filed on 11/15/1999, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/108,558, attorney docket no. 25791.9, filed on 11/16/1998; (5) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/183,546, 30 filed on 2/18/2000; (6) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/523,460, attorney docket no. 25791.11.02, filed on 3/10/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/124,042, filed on 3/11/1999; (7) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/512,895, attorney docket no. 25791.12.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing dates of U.S. provisional application no. 35 60/121,841, attorney docket no. 25791.12, filed on 2/26/1999 and U.S. provisional

application no. 60/154,047, attorney docket no. 25791.29, filed on 9/16/1999; (8) U.S. utility application no. 09/511,941, attorney docket no. 25791.16.02, filed on 2/24/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional serial no. 60/121,907, attorney docket no. 25791.16, filed on 2/26/1999; (9) U.S. utility patent 5 application no. 09/588,946, attorney docket no. 25791.17.02, filed on June 7, 2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/137,998, attorney docket no. 25791.17, filed on 6/7/1999; (10) U.S. utility patent application no. 09/559,122, attorney docket no. 25791.23.02, filed on 10/4/2000, which claimed the benefit of the filing date of U.S. provisional application no. 60/131,106, attorney docket no. 25791.23, filed on 4/26/1999; (11) U.S. provisional application no. 60/146,203, attorney docket no. 25791.25, filed on 7/29/1999; (12) U.S. provisional application no. 60/143,039, attorney docket no. 25791.26, filed on 7/9/1999; (13) U.S. provisional patent application serial no. 60/162,671, attorney docket no. 25791.27, filed on 11/1/1999; (14) U.S. provisional 15 application no. 60/159,039, attorney docket no. 25791.36, filed on 10/12/1999; (15) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/159,033, attorney docket no. 25791.37, filed on 10/12/1999; and (16) U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/165,228, attorney docket no. 25791.39, filed on 11/12/1999, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. In a preferred embodiment, the amount of radial 20 expansion provided in step 105 ranges from about 5% to 20%.

In a preferred embodiment, as illustrated in FIG. 29, in step 2710, at least a portion of the expandable tubular member 2805 is further radially expanded by using a radial expansion tool 2905 to apply direct radial pressure to the expandable tubular member 2805. The radial expansion tool 2905 may be any number of 25 conventional radial expansion tools suitable for applying direct radial pressure to a tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the radial expansion tool 2905 is provided substantially as disclosed on one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 5,014,779 and 5,083,608, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. In a preferred embodiment, the amount of radial expansion of the 30 expandable tubular member 2805 provided in step 2710 ranges up to about 5%. In a preferred embodiment, the radial contact pressures generated by the radial expansion tool 2905 in step 2710 range from about 5,000 to 140,000 psi. In order to optimally plastically deform the expandable tubular member 205 to the final desired geometry.

In a preferred embodiment, the radial expansion provided in step 2705 is limited to the portion of the expandable tubular member 2805 that overlaps with the preexisting wellbore casing 2810. In this manner, the high compressive forces typically required to radially expand the portion of the expandable tubular member 5 2805 that overlaps with the preexisting wellbore casing 2810 are optimally provided.

In an alternative embodiment, the radial expansion in step 2705 radially expands the expandable tubular member 2805 to provide an inside diameter substantially equal to the inside diameter of the pre-existing wellbore casing 2810. In this manner, a mono-diameter wellbore casing is optimally provided.

10 Thus, the method 2700 provides a 2-step radial expansion process that utilizes: (1) a relatively quick method of radial expansion for the majority of the radial expansion; and (2) a high contact pressure method for the remaining radial expansion. In several alternative embodiments, the method 2700 is used to form or repair wellbore casings, pipelines, or structural supports.

15 The method 2700 further provides an apparatus and method for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure. The expandable tubular is initially coupled to the preexisting structure by axially displacing an expansion cone within the expandable tubular member. The expandable tubular member is then further radially expanded by applying a radial force to the expandable tubular. The 20 apparatus and method have wide application to the formation and repair of wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports. The apparatus and method provide an efficient and reliable method for forming and repairing wellbore casings, pipelines, and structural supports. In a preferred implementation, the initial radial expansion of the expandable tubular member by axially displacing the expansion cone provide 25 from about 5% to 25% of radial expansion, and the subsequent application of direct radial pressure to the expandable tubular member provides an additional radial expansion of up to about 10%. In this manner, the desired final geometry of the radially expanded tubular member is optimally achieved in a time efficient and reliable manner. This method and apparatus is particularly useful in optimally 30 creating profiles and seal geometries for liner tops and for connections between jointed tubulars.

35 A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular

member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member, and lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes: injecting a lubricating fluid into the trailing edge of the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricating fluid has a viscosity ranging from about 1 to 10,000 centipoise. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting lubricating fluid into a tapered end of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting lubricating fluid into the area around the axial midpoint of a first tapered end of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting lubricating fluid into a second end of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting lubricating fluid into a tapered first end and a second end of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting lubricating fluid into an interior of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting lubricating fluid through an outer surface of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the injecting includes: injecting the lubricating fluid into a plurality of discrete locations along the trailing edge portion. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricating fluid includes drilling mud. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricating fluid further includes: TorqTrim III, EP Mudlib, and DrillN-Slid. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricating fluid includes TorqTrim III, EP Mudlib, and Drill-N-Slid. In a preferred embodiment, the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes: coating the interior surface of the tubular member with a lubricant. In a preferred embodiment, lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes: coating the interior surface of the tubular member with a first part of a lubricant, and applying a second part of the lubricant to the interior surface of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant comprises a metallic soap. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant is selected from the group consisting of C-Lube-10, C-PHOS-58-M, and C-PHOS-58-R. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant provides a sliding friction coefficient of less than about 0.20. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant is chemically bonded to the interior surfaces of the tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant is mechanically bonded to the interior surfaces of the tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant is adhesively bonded to the interior surface of the tubular members. In a preferred

embodiment, the lubricant includes epoxy, molybdenum disulfide, graphite, aluminum, copper, alumosilicate and polyethylenepolyamine.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone

5 within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member. The tubular member preferably includes: an annular member, including: a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %, a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %,

10 imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness, no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30 %, and no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to about 25%.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes injecting a lubricating fluid into the preexisting structure, positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricating fluid includes: BARO-LUB GOLD-SEAL™ brand drilling mud lubricant.

20 A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by

25 pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: a first tubular member, a second tubular member, and a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the threaded connection includes: one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between

30 the first and second tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the threaded connection comprises a pin and box threaded connection. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection. In a preferred embodiment, one of the sealing members is positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection; and wherein

35 another one of the sealing members is not positioned adjacent to an end portion of

the threaded connection. In a preferred embodiment, a plurality of the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes a plurality of tubular members having threaded portions that are coupled to one another by the process of: coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with a sealant, coupling the threaded portions of the tubular members, and curing the sealant. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant is selected from the group consisting of epoxies, thermosetting sealing compounds, curable sealing compounds, and sealing compounds having polymerizable materials. In a preferred embodiment, the method further includes: initially curing the sealant prior to radially expanding the tubular members, and finally curing the sealant after radially expanding the tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant can be stretched up to about 30 to 40 percent after curing without failure. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant is resistant to conventional wellbore fluidic materials. In a preferred embodiment, the material properties of the sealant are substantially stable for temperatures ranging from about 0 to 450 °F. In a preferred embodiment, the method further includes: applying a primer to the threaded portions of the tubular members prior to coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with the sealant. In a preferred embodiment, the primer includes a curing catalyst. In a preferred embodiment, the primer is applied to the threaded portion of one of the tubular members and the sealant is applied to the threaded portion of the other one of the tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the primer includes a curing catalyst.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular member includes: a pair of rings for engaging the

preexisting structure, and a sealing element positioned between the rings for sealing the interface between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular member includes one or more slots. In a preferred embodiment, the slots are provided at a preexpanded portion of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the slots are provided at a non-preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the tubular member includes: a first preexpanded portion, an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element, and a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member by applying an axial force to the expansion cone. The axial force preferably includes a substantially constant axial force, and an increased axial force. In a preferred embodiment, the increased axial force is provided on a periodic basis. In a preferred embodiment, the increased axial force is provided on a random basis. In a preferred embodiment, the ratio of the increased axial force to the substantially constant axial force ranges from about 5 to 40 %.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting

structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pushing and pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, pushing the expansion cone includes: injecting a pressurized fluidic material into contact with the expansion cone.

5 A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member, and injecting a  
10 curable fluidic sealing material between the tubular member and the preexisting structure prior to axially displacing the expansion cone.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by increasing the size of the expansion cone, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

20 A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by heating a portion of the tubular member, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

25 A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchoring device within the preexisting structure, positioning the anchoring device above the expansion cone, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure using the anchoring device, and axially displacing the expansion cone.

30 A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, explosively anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes fixing the position of an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, driving the expandable tubular member onto the expansion cone in a first direction, and axially displacing the expansion cone in a second 5 direction relative to the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the first and second directions are different.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular, an expansion cone, and a resilient anchor within the preexisting structure, releasing the 10 resilient anchor, and axially displacing the expansion cone within the expandable tubular member.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchor into the preexisting structure, anchoring 15 the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by: pivoting one or more engagement elements, and axially displacing the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, pivoting the engagement elements includes: actuating the engagement elements. In a preferred embodiment, pivoting the engagement elements includes: placing a quantity of a fluidic material onto the engagement 20 elements. In a preferred embodiment, pivoting the engagement elements includes: displacing the expandable tubular member.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, placing a quantity of 25 a fluidic material onto the expandable tubular member to anchor the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and axially displacing the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the fluidic material comprises a barite plug. In a preferred embodiment, the fluidic material comprises a flex plug.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting 30 structure has also been described that includes positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by injecting a quantity of a hardenable fluidic material into the preexisting structure, at least partially curing the hardenable fluidic sealing material, and 35 axially displacing the expansion cone.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, and applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member in a downward direction.

5 A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, injecting a quantity of a first fluidic material having a first density into the region of the preexisting structure outside of the expandable tubular member, and injecting a quantity of a 10 second fluidic material having a second density into a portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the second density is greater than the first density.

A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, applying an axial force to the expansion cone, and pressurizing an interior portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone.

20 A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure, and applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member.

An apparatus for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring 25 device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member, including: a housing including a tapered first end and a second end, one or more grooves formed in the outer surface of the tapered first end, and one or more axial flow 30 passages fluidically coupled to the grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the grooves include circumferential grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the grooves include spiral grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the grooves are concentrated around the axial midpoint of the tapered portion of the housing. In a preferred embodiment, the axial flow passages include axial grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the axial 35 grooves are spaced apart by at least about 3 inches in the circumferential direction.

In a preferred embodiment, the axial grooves extend from the tapered first end of the body to the grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the axial grooves extend from the second end of the body to the grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the axial grooves extend from the tapered first end of the body to the second end of the body.

- 5 In a preferred embodiment, the axial flow passages are positioned within the housing of the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the axial flow passages extend from the tapered first end of the body to the grooves. In a preferred embodiment, the axial flow passages extend from the tapered first end of the body to the second end of the body. In a preferred embodiment, the axial flow passages
- 10 extend from the second end of the body to the grooves. In a preferred embodiment, one or more of the flow passages include inserts having restricted flow passages. In a preferred embodiment, one or more of the axial flow passages include filters. In a preferred embodiment, the cross sectional area of the grooves is greater than the cross sectional area of the axial flow passages. In a preferred embodiment, the
- 15 cross-sectional area of the grooves ranges from about  $2 \times 10^{-4}$  in<sup>2</sup> to  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  in<sup>2</sup>. In a preferred embodiment, the cross-sectional area of the axial flow passages ranges from about  $2 \times 10^{-4}$  in<sup>2</sup> to  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  in<sup>2</sup>. In a preferred embodiment, the angle of attack of the first tapered end of the body ranges from about 10 to 30 degrees. In a preferred embodiment, the grooves are concentrated in a trailing edge portion of the
- 20 tapered first end. In a preferred embodiment, the angle of inclination of the axial flow passages relative to the longitudinal axis of the expansion cone is greater than the angle of attack of the first tapered end. In a preferred embodiment, the grooves include: a flow channel having a first radius of curvature, a first shoulder positioned on one side of the flow channel having a second radius of curvature, and a second
- 25 shoulder positioned on the other side of the flow channel having a third radius of curvature. In a preferred embodiment, the first, second and third radii of curvature are substantially equal. In a preferred embodiment, the axial flow passages include: a flow channel having a first radius of curvature, a first shoulder positioned on one side of the flow channel having a second radius of curvature, and a second shoulder
- 30 positioned on the other side of the flow channel having a third radius of curvature. In a preferred embodiment, the first, second and third radii of curvature are substantially equal. In a preferred embodiment, the second radius of curvature is greater than the third radius of curvature.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an

anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: an annular member, having: a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %, a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %; imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness, no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30 %, and no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to about 25%.

10 An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: a first tubular member, a second tubular member, and a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the threaded connection includes: one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between the first and second tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the threaded connection comprises a pin and box threaded connection. In a preferred embodiment, the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection. In a preferred embodiment, one of the sealing members is positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection, and another one of the sealing members is not positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection. In a preferred embodiment, the plurality of the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

15 An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: a layer of a lubricant coupled to the interior surface of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant comprises a metallic soap. In a preferred embodiment,

20

25

30

35

the lubricant is selected from the group consisting of C-Lube-10, C-PHOS-58-M, and C-PHOS-58-R. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant provides a sliding friction coefficient of less than about 0.20. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant is chemically bonded to the interior surface of the expandable tubular member. In a 5 preferred embodiment, the lubricant is mechanically bonded to the interior surface of the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant is adhesively bonded to the interior surface of the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the lubricant includes epoxy, molybdenum disulfide, graphite, aluminum, copper, alumisilicate and polyethylenepolyamine.

10 An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a 15 preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: a pair of tubular members having threaded portions coupled to one another, and a quantity of a sealant within the threaded portions of the tubular members. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant is selected from the group consisting of epoxies, thermosetting sealing compounds, curable sealing compounds, and sealing 20 compounds having polymerizable materials. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant includes an initial cure cycle and a final cure cycle. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant can be stretched up to about 30 to 40 percent without failure. In a preferred embodiment, the sealant is resistant to conventional wellbore fluidic materials. In a preferred embodiment, the material properties of the sealant are substantially stable 25 for temperatures ranging from about 0 to 450 °F. In a preferred embodiment, the threaded portions of the tubular members include a primer for improving the adhesion of the sealant to the threaded portions.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an 30 anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: a pair of rings for engaging the preexisting structure, and a sealing element positioned between the

rings for sealing the interface between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes one or more slots. In a preferred embodiment, the slots are provided at a preexpanded portion of the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the slots are provided at a non-preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, and an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes: a first preexpanded portion, an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element, and a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes an expandable tubular member, an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure, an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member, and a valveable fluid passage coupled to the anchoring device.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a first support member, a second support member coupled to the first support member, an expansion cone coupled to the first support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, and an anchoring device coupled to the second support member adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure. In a preferred embodiment, the anchoring device is positioned above the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the outside diameter of the expansion cone is greater than the inside diameter of the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment,

the outside diameter of the expansion cone is approximately equal to the outside diameter of the expandable tubular member.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a first support member, a second support member coupled to the first support member, an expansion cone coupled to the first support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, and an explosive anchoring device coupled to the second support member adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure.

5. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a first support member, a second support member coupled to the first support member, an expansion cone coupled to the first support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, and an explosive anchoring device coupled to the second support member adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure.

10. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expandable expansion cone coupled to the support member, and an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone.

15. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expandable expansion cone coupled to the support member, and an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes one or more anchoring devices. In a preferred embodiment, the expandable tubular member includes a slotted end portion.

20. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone including one or more shape memory metal inserts, and a heater coupled to the support member in opposing relation to the shape memory metal inserts.

25. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone, and a resilient anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor includes a resilient scroll. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor includes one or more resilient arms. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor includes one or more resilient radially oriented elements. In a preferred embodiment, the resilient anchor is adapted to mate with the expansion cone.

An expandable tubular member has also been described that includes an expandable tubular body, one or more resilient panels coupled to the expandable tubular body, and a release member releasably coupled to the resilient panels adapted to controllably release the resilient panels.

- 5 An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone, and an anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member, including: one or more spikes pivotally coupled to the
- 10 expandable tubular member for engaging the preexisting structure. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus further includes one or more corresponding actuators for pivoting the spikes.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member,

- 15 an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone, and an anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member, including: one or more petal baskets pivotally coupled to the expandable tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus further includes one or more corresponding actuators for pivoting the petal baskets.

- 20 An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, including: a slotted portion provided at one end of the expandable tubular member.

- 25 An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member, an expansion cone, an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, a coupling device coupled to the support member and an end portion of the expandable tubular member, and a mass coupled to the end portion of the expandable tubular member.

- 30 In a preferred embodiment, the weight of the mass is greater than about 50 to 100 % of the yield strength of the expandable tubular member.

An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure has also been described that includes a support member including a fluid passage, an expansion cone coupled to the support member, an expandable tubular

- 35 member coupled to the expansion cone, a slip joint coupled to the expansion cone,

an end plate coupled to the slip joint, a fluid chamber coupled to the fluid passage, the fluid chamber defined by the interior portion of the expandable tubular member between the expansion cone and the end plate.

A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure has been

5 described that includes positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone, removing the expansion cone, and applying direct radial pressure to the first tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone includes pressurizing at least a portion of the interior of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment,

10 axially displacing the expansion cone includes: injecting a fluidic material into the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone includes: applying a tensile force to the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone includes: displacing the expansion cone into the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially

15 displacing the expansion cone includes: displacing the expansion cone out of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone radially expands the tubular member by about 10% to 20%. In a preferred embodiment, applying direct radial pressure to the first tubular member radially expands the tubular member by up to about 5%. In a preferred embodiment,

20 applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member includes applying a radial force at discrete locations. In a preferred embodiment, the preexisting structure includes a wellbore casing. In a preferred embodiment, the preexisting structure includes a pipeline. In a preferred embodiment, the preexisting structure includes a structural support.

25 An apparatus also has been described that includes a tubular member coupled to a preexisting structure. The tubular member is coupled to the preexisting structure by the process of: positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure, axially displacing the expansion cone, removing the expansion cone, and applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone includes: pressurizing at least a portion of the interior of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment,

30 axially displacing the expansion cone includes: injecting a fluidic material into the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone includes: applying a tensile force to the expansion cone. In a preferred embodiment,

35 axially displacing the expansion cone includes: displacing the

expansion cone into the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone includes: displacing the expansion cone out of the tubular member. In a preferred embodiment, axially displacing the expansion cone radially expands the tubular member by about 10% to 20%. In a preferred embodiment, applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member radially expands the tubular member by up to about 5%. In a preferred embodiment, applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member includes applying a radial force at discrete locations. In a preferred embodiment, the preexisting structure includes a wellbore casing. In a preferred embodiment, the preexisting structure includes a pipeline. In a preferred embodiment, the preexisting structure includes a structural support.

Although this detailed description has shown and described illustrative embodiments of the invention, this description contemplates a wide range of modifications, changes, and substitutions. In some instances, one may employ some features of the present invention without a corresponding use of the other features. Accordingly, it is appropriate that readers should construe the appended claims broadly, and in a manner consistent with the scope of the invention.

CLAIMS

1. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 5 placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
    - injecting a quantity of a first fluidic material having a first density into the region of the preexisting structure outside of the expandable tubular member; and
    - injecting a quantity of a second fluidic material having a second density into
  - 10 a portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone;
    - wherein the second density is greater than the first density; and
    - displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member.
2. A method of coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 15 fixing the position of an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
  - driving the expandable tubular member onto the expansion cone in a first direction; and
  - axially displacing the expansion cone in a second direction relative to the
- 20 expandable tubular member;
  - wherein the first and second directions are different.
3. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 25 placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; and
  - applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member in a downward direction.
- 30 4. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
  - axially displacing the expansion cone;
- 35 removing the expansion cone; and

applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member.

5. The method of claim 4, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

5 pressurizing at least a portion of the interior of the tubular member.

6. The method of claim 4, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

injecting a fluidic material into the tubular member.

10

7. The method of claim 4, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

applying a tensile force to the expansion cone.

15 8. The method of claim 4, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

displacing the expansion cone into the tubular member.

9. The method of claim 4, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone 20 includes:

displacing the expansion cone out of the tubular member.

10. The method of claim 4, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone 25 radially expands the tubular member by 10% to 20%.

11. The method of claim 4, wherein applying direct radial pressure to the first tubular member radially expands the tubular member by up to 5%.

12. The method of claim 4, wherein applying direct radial pressure to the tubular 30 member includes applying a radial force at discrete locations.

13. The method of claim 4, wherein the preexisting structure includes a wellbore casing.

35 14. The method of claim 4, wherein the preexisting structure includes a pipeline.

15. The method of claim 4, wherein the preexisting structure includes a structural support.

1. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
  - anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure;
  - axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member; and
  - lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member.
2. The method of claim 1, wherein lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes:
  - injecting a lubricating fluid into the trailing edge of the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member.
3. The method of claim 2, wherein the lubricating fluid has a viscosity ranging from about 1 to 10,000 centipoise.
4. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:
  - injecting lubricating fluid into a tapered end of the expansion cone.
5. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:
  - injecting lubricating fluid into the area around the axial midpoint of a first tapered end of the expansion cone.
6. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:
  - injecting lubricating fluid into a second end of the expansion cone.
7. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:
  - injecting lubricating fluid into a tapered first end and a second end of the expansion cone.
8. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:
  - injecting lubricating fluid into an interior of the expansion cone.

9. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:  
injecting lubricating fluid through an outer surface of the expansion cone.
- 5 10. The method of claim 2, wherein the injecting includes:  
injecting the lubricating fluid into a plurality of discrete locations along the trailing edge portion.
11. The method of claim 2, wherein the lubricating fluid comprises:  
10 drilling mud.
12. The method of claim 2, wherein the lubricating fluid further includes:  
TorqTrim III;  
EP Mudlib; and  
15 DrillIN-Slid.
13. The method of claim 2, wherein the lubricating fluid comprises:  
TorqTrim III;  
EP Mudlib; and  
20 DrillIN-Slid.
14. The method of claim 1, wherein lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes:  
coating the interior surface of the tubular member with a lubricant.  
25
15. The method of claim 1, wherein lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes:  
coating the interior surface of the tubular member with a first part of a lubricant; and  
30 applying a second part of the lubricant to the interior surface of the tubular member.
16. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant comprises a metallic soap.

17. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant is selected from the group consisting of C-Lube-10, C-PHOS-58-M, and C-PHOS-58-R.
18. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant provides a sliding friction coefficient of less than about 0.20.
19. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant is chemically bonded to the interior surfaces of the tubular members.
- 10 20. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant is mechanically bonded to the interior surfaces of the tubular members.
- 15 21. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant is adhesively bonded to the interior surface of the tubular members.
22. The method of claim 14, wherein the lubricant includes epoxy, molybdenum disulfide, graphite, aluminum, copper, alumosilicate and polyethylenepolyamine.
23. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
  - anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and
  - axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by
- 25 26. pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member; wherein the tubular member includes:
  - an annular member, including:
    - a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %;
    - a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %;
    - imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness;
    - no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30 %; and
    - no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to about 25%.

24. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
    injecting a lubricating fluid into the preexisting structure;  
    positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
    anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
    axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

10 25. The method of claim 24, wherein the lubricating fluid comprises:  
    BARO-LUB GOLD-SEAL™ brand drilling mud lubricant.

26. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
    positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
    anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
    axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member;

20 27. Wherein the expandable tubular member includes:  
    a first tubular member;  
    a second tubular member; and  
    a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member, the threaded connection including:  
25     one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between the first and second tubular members.

28. The method of claim 26, wherein the threaded connection comprises a pin and box threaded connection.

30 29. The method of claim 26, wherein the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

35 30. The method of claim 26, wherein one of the sealing members is positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection; and wherein another one of

the sealing members is not positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

30. The method of claim 26, wherein a plurality of the sealing members are  
5 positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

31. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

10 positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member;

15 wherein the expandable tubular member includes a plurality of tubular members having threaded portions that are coupled to one another by the process of:

coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with a sealant;

coupling the threaded portions of the tubular members; and

curing the sealant.

20 32. The method of claim 31, wherein the sealant is selected from the group consisting of epoxies, thermosetting sealing compounds, curable sealing compounds, and sealing compounds having polymerizable materials.

33. The method of claim 31, further including:  
25 initially curing the sealant prior to radially expanding the tubular members;  
and  
finally curing the sealant after radially expanding the tubular members.

34. The method of claim 31, wherein the sealant can be stretched up to about 30  
30 to 40 percent after curing without failure.

35. The method of claim 31, wherein the sealant is resistant to conventional wellbore fluidic materials.

36. The method of claim 31, wherein the material properties of the sealant are substantially stable for temperatures ranging from about 0 to 450 °F.
37. The method of claim 31, further including:
  - 5 applying a primer to the threaded portions of the tubular members prior to coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with the sealant.
38. The method of claim 37, wherein the primer includes a curing catalyst.
- 10 39. The method of claim 37, wherein the primer is applied to the threaded portion of one of the tubular members and the sealant is applied to the threaded portion of the other one of the tubular members.
- 15 40. The method of claim 37, wherein the primer includes a curing catalyst.
41. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
  - 20 anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member; wherein the tubular member includes:
    - a pair of rings for engaging the preexisting structure; and
  - 25 a sealing element positioned between the rings for sealing the interface between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.
42. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 30 positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member;
  - 35 wherein the tubular member includes one or more slots.

43. The method of claim 42, wherein the slots are provided at a preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

5 44. The method of claim 42, wherein the slots are provided at a non-preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

45. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

10 positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member;

15 wherein the tubular member includes:

a first preexpanded portion;

an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element; and

a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

20 46. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

25 anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member by applying an axial force to the expansion cone;

wherein the axial force includes:

30 a substantially constant axial force; and

an increased axial force.

47. The method of claim 46, wherein the increased axial force is provided on a periodic basis.

35

48. The method of claim 46, wherein the increased axial force is provided on a random basis.

49. The method of claim 46, wherein the ratio of the increased axial force to the substantially constant axial force ranges from about 5 to 40 %.

50. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
10 positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pushing and pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member.

51. The method of claim 50, wherein pushing the expansion cone includes:  
15 injecting a pressurized fluidic material into contact with the expansion cone.

52. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
20 positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure;  
25 axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member; and  
injecting a curable fluidic sealing material between the tubular member and the preexisting structure prior to axially displacing the expansion cone.

53. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
30 positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by increasing the size of the expansion cone; and

axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

55. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, 5 comprising:

positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by heating a portion of the tubular member; and

10 axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

56. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

15 positioning the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchoring device within the preexisting structure;

positioning the anchoring device above the expansion cone;

anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure using the anchoring device; and

20 axially displacing the expansion cone.

57. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

25 positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

explosively anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member.

58. A method of coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure, 30 comprising:

fixing the position of an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

driving the expandable tubular member onto the expansion cone in a first direction; and

35 axially displacing the expansion cone in a second direction relative to the expandable tubular member;

wherein the first and second directions are different.

59. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 5 placing the expandable tubular, an expansion cone, and a resilient anchor within the preexisting structure;
  - releasing the resilient anchor; and
  - axially displacing the expansion cone within the expandable tubular member.
- 10 60. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - placing the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchor into the preexisting structure;
  - anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by:
- 15 pivoting one or more engagement elements; and
- axially displacing the expansion cone.
61. The method of claim 60, wherein pivoting the engagement elements includes:
  - 20 actuating the engagement elements.
62. The method of claim 60, wherein pivoting the engagement elements includes:
  - 25 placing a quantity of a fluidic material onto the engagement elements.
63. The method of claim 60, wherein pivoting the engagement elements includes:
  - 30 displacing the expandable tubular member.
64. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 35 placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure;
  - placing a quantity of a fluidic material onto the expandable tubular member to anchor the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

axially displacing the expansion cone.

65. The method of claim 64, wherein the fluidic material comprises a barite plug.
- 5 66. The method of claim 64, wherein the fluidic material comprises a flex plug.
67. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 10 positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure;
  - anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by injecting a quantity of a hardenable fluidic material into the preexisting structure;
  - at least partially curing the hardenable fluidic sealing material; and
  - 15 axially displacing the expansion cone.
68. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 20 placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; and
  - applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member in a downward direction.
69. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:
  - 25 placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;
  - injecting a quantity of a first fluidic material having a first density into the region of the preexisting structure outside of the expandable tubular member; and
  - 30 injecting a quantity of a second fluidic material having a second density into a portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone;
  - wherein the second density is greater than the first density.
70. A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure;

anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure;

applying an axial force to the expansion cone; and

5       pressurizing an interior portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone.

71.      A method of coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

10        placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure; and

             applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member.

72.      An apparatus for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure,

15      comprising:

             an expandable tubular member;

             an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

             an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and

20      adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member, including:

             a housing including a tapered first end and a second end;

             one or more grooves formed in the outer surface of the tapered first end; and

             one or more axial flow passages fluidically coupled to the grooves.

25      73.     The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the grooves comprise circumferential grooves.

74.     The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the grooves comprise spiral grooves.

30      75.     The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the grooves are concentrated around the axial midpoint of the tapered portion of the housing.

76.     The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the axial flow passages comprise axial grooves.

35

77. The apparatus of claim 76, wherein the axial grooves are spaced apart by at least about 3 inches in the circumferential direction.

78. The apparatus of claim 76, wherein the axial grooves extend from the 5 tapered first end of the body to the grooves.

79. The apparatus of claim 76, wherein the axial grooves extend from the second end of the body to the grooves.

10 80. The apparatus of claim 76, wherein the axial grooves extend from the tapered first end of the body to the second end of the body.

15 81. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the axial flow passages are positioned within the housing of the expansion cone.

82. The apparatus of claim 81, wherein the axial flow passages extend from the tapered first end of the body to the grooves.

20 83. The apparatus of claim 81, wherein the axial flow passages extend from the tapered first end of the body to the second end of the body.

84. The apparatus of claim 83, wherein the axial flow passages extend from the second end of the body to the grooves.

25 85. The apparatus of claim 83, wherein one or more of the flow passages include inserts having restricted flow passages.

86. The apparatus of claim 83, wherein one or more of the axial flow passages include filters.

30 87. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the cross sectional area of the grooves is greater than the cross sectional area of the axial flow passages.

88. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the cross-sectional area of the grooves 35 ranges from about  $2 \times 10^{-4}$  in $^2$  to  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  in $^2$ .

89. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the cross-sectional area of the axial flow passages ranges from about  $2 \times 10^{-4}$  in<sup>2</sup> to  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  in<sup>2</sup>.

5 90. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the angle of attack of the first tapered end of the body ranges from about 10 to 30 degrees.

10 91. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the grooves are concentrated in a trailing edge portion of the tapered first end.

15 92. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the angle of inclination of the axial flow passages relative to the longitudinal axis of the expansion cone is greater than the angle of attack of the first tapered end.

20 93. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the grooves include:  
a flow channel having a first radius of curvature;  
a first shoulder positioned on one side of the flow channel having a second radius of curvature; and  
a second shoulder positioned on the other side of the flow channel having a third radius of curvature.

25 94. The apparatus of claim 93, wherein the first, second and third radii of curvature are substantially equal.

30 95. The apparatus of claim 72, wherein the axial flow passages include:  
a flow channel having a first radius of curvature;  
a first shoulder positioned on one side of the flow channel having a second radius of curvature; and  
a second shoulder positioned on the other side of the flow channel having a third radius of curvature.

96. The apparatus of claim 95, wherein the first, second and third radii of curvature are substantially equal.

97. The apparatus of claim 95, wherein the second radius of curvature is greater than the third radius of curvature.

98. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
5        an expandable tubular member;  
      an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
      an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and  
10      adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;  
      wherein the expandable tubular member includes:  
      an annular member, having:  
      a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %;  
      a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %;  
15      imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness;  
      no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30 %; and  
      no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to  
about 25%.

20      99. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
      an expandable tubular member;  
      an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
25      an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;  
      wherein the expandable tubular member includes:  
      a first tubular member;  
      a second tubular member; and  
30      a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member, the threaded connection including:  
      one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between the first and second tubular members.

100. The apparatus of claim 99, wherein the threaded connection comprises a pin and box threaded connection.

101. The apparatus of claim 99, wherein the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

102. The apparatus of claim 99, wherein one of the sealing members is positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection; and wherein another one of the sealing members is not positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

103. The apparatus of claim 99, wherein a plurality of the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

104. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
an expandable tubular member;  
an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;  
wherein the expandable tubular member includes:  
a layer of a lubricant coupled to the interior surface of the tubular member.

105. The apparatus of claim 104, wherein the lubricant comprises a metallic soap.

106. The apparatus of claim 104, wherein the lubricant is selected from the group consisting of C-Lube-10, C-PHOS-58-M, and C-PHOS-58-R.

107. The apparatus of claim 104, wherein the lubricant provides a sliding friction coefficient of less than about 0.20.

108. The apparatus of claim 104, wherein the lubricant is chemically bonded to the interior surface of the expandable tubular member.

109. The apparatus of claim 104, wherein the lubricant is mechanically bonded to the interior surface of the expandable tubular member.

110. The apparatus of claim 104, wherein the lubricant is adhesively bonded to the interior surface of the expandable tubular member.

111. The apparatus of claim 110, wherein the lubricant includes epoxy, molybdenum disulfide, graphite, aluminum, copper, alumisilicate and polyethylenepolyamine.

112. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

- an expandable tubular member;
- an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and
- an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;
- wherein the expandable tubular member includes:
- a pair of tubular members having threaded portions coupled to one another;
- and
- a quantity of a sealant within the threaded portions of the tubular members.

113. The apparatus of claim 112, wherein the sealant is selected from the group consisting of epoxies, thermosetting sealing compounds, curable sealing compounds, and sealing compounds having polymerizable materials.

114. The apparatus of claim 112, wherein the sealant includes an initial cure cycle and a final cure cycle.

115. The apparatus of claim 112, wherein the sealant can be stretched up to about 30 to 40 percent without failure.

116. The apparatus of claim 112, wherein the sealant is resistant to conventional wellbore fluidic materials.

117. The apparatus of claim 112, wherein the material properties of the sealant are substantially stable for temperatures ranging from about 0 to 450 °F.

118. The apparatus of claim 112, wherein the threaded portions of the tubular members include a primer for improving the adhesion of the sealant to the threaded portions.

119. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

10        an expandable tubular member;

              an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

              an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;

15        wherein the expandable tubular member includes: a pair of rings for engaging the preexisting structure; and

              a sealing element positioned between the rings for sealing the interface between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.

20        120. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

              an expandable tubular member;

              an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

25        an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;

              wherein the expandable tubular member includes one or more slots.

121. The apparatus of claim 120, wherein the slots are provided at a preexpanded portion of the expandable tubular member.

30

122. The apparatus of claim 120, wherein the slots are provided at a non-preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

123. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

- an expandable tubular member;
- an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and
- an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member;
- wherein the expandable tubular member includes:
- 10 a first preexpanded portion;
- an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element; and
- 15 a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

124. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

- an expandable tubular member;
- an anchoring device adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure;
- an expansion cone movably coupled to the expandable tubular member and adapted to radially expand the expandable tubular member; and
- 20 a valveable fluid passage coupled to the anchoring device.

125. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

- 25 a first support member;
- a second support member coupled to the first support member;
- an expansion cone coupled to the first support member;
- an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone; and
- an anchoring device coupled to the second support member adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure;
- 30 wherein the anchoring device is positioned above the expansion cone.

126. The apparatus of claim 125, wherein the outside diameter of the expansion cone is greater than the inside diameter of the expandable tubular member.

127. The apparatus of claim 125, wherein the outside diameter of the expansion cone is approximately equal to the outside diameter of the expandable tubular member.

5 128. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
a first support member;  
a second support member coupled to the first support member;  
an expansion cone coupled to the first support member;  
10 an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone; and  
an explosive anchoring device coupled to the second support member  
adapted to couple the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure.

15 129. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
a support member;  
an expandable expansion cone coupled to the support member; and  
an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone.

20 130. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
a support member;  
an expandable expansion cone coupled to the support member; and  
an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone.

25 131. The apparatus of claim 130, wherein the expandable tubular member includes one or more anchoring devices.

30 132. The apparatus of claim 130, wherein the expandable tubular member includes a slotted end portion.

133. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
a support member;  
35 an expansion cone coupled to the support member;

an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone including one or more shape memory metal inserts; and  
a heater coupled to the support member in opposing relation to the shape memory metal inserts.

5

134. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

a support member;  
an expansion cone coupled to the support member;

10 an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone;  
and

a resilient anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member.

15 135. The apparatus of claim 134, wherein the resilient anchor includes:  
a resilient scroll.

136. The apparatus of claim 134, wherein the resilient anchor includes:  
one or more resilient arms.

20 137. The apparatus of claim 134, wherein the resilient anchor includes:  
one or more resilient radially oriented elements.

138. The apparatus of claim 134, wherein the resilient anchor is adapted to mate with the expansion cone.

25

139. An expandable tubular member, comprising:  
an expandable tubular body;  
one or more resilient panels coupled to the expandable tubular body; and  
a release member releasably coupled to the resilient panels adapted to  
30 controllably release the resilient panels.

140. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

35 a support member;  
an expansion cone coupled to the support member;

an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone;  
and  
an anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member, including:  
one or more spikes pivotally coupled to the expandable tubular member for  
engaging the preexisting structure.

5 141. The apparatus of claim 140, further including one or more corresponding  
actuators for pivoting the spikes.

10 142. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting  
structure, comprising:  
a support member;  
an expansion cone coupled to the support member;  
an expandable tubular member coupled to the expandable expansion cone;  
15 and  
an anchor coupled to the expandable tubular member, including:  
one or more petal baskets pivotally coupled to the expandable tubular  
member.

20 143. The apparatus of claim 142, further including one or more corresponding  
actuators for pivoting the petal baskets.

144. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting  
structure, comprising:  
25 a support member;  
an expansion cone coupled to the support member;  
an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone, including:  
a slotted portion provided at one end of the expandable tubular member.

30 145. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting  
structure, comprising:  
a support member;  
an expansion cone;  
an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone;

a coupling device coupled to the support member and an end portion of the expandable tubular member; and  
a mass coupled to the end portion of the expandable tubular member;  
wherein the weight of the mass is greater than about 50 to 100 % of the yield  
5 strength of the expandable tubular member.

146. An apparatus for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
10 a support member including a fluid passage;  
an expansion cone coupled to the support member;  
an expandable tubular member coupled to the expansion cone;  
a slip joint coupled to the expansion cone;  
an end plate coupled to the slip joint;  
a fluid chamber coupled to the fluid passage, the fluid chamber defined by  
15 the interior portion of the expandable tubular member between the expansion cone  
and the end plate.

147. A method of coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure,  
comprising:  
20 positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting  
structure;  
axially displacing the expansion cone;  
removing the expansion cone; and  
applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member.  
25

148. The method of claim 147, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:  
pressurizing at least a portion of the interior of the tubular member.

30 149. The method of claim 147, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:  
injecting a fluidic material into the tubular member.

35 150. The method of claim 147, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:

3  
applying a tensile force to the expansion cone.

151. The method of claim 147, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

5 displacing the expansion cone into the tubular member.

152. The method of claim 147, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

displacing the expansion cone out of the tubular member.

10 153. The method of claim 147, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone radially expands the tubular member by about 10% to 20%.

154. The method of claim 147, wherein applying direct radial pressure to the first 15 tubular member radially expands the tubular member by up to about 5%.

155. The method of claim 147, wherein applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member includes applying a radial force at discrete locations.

20 156. The method of claim 147, wherein the preexisting structure includes a wellbore casing.

157. The method of claim 147, wherein the preexisting structure includes a pipeline.

25 158. The method of claim 147, wherein the preexisting structure includes a structural support.

159. An apparatus, comprising:

30 a tubular member coupled to a preexisting structure;  
wherein the tubular member is coupled to the preexisting structure by the process of:

positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

35 axially displacing the expansion cone;

removing the expansion cone; and  
applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member.

160. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
5 includes:

pressurizing at least a portion of the interior of the tubular member.

161. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:

10 injecting a fluidic material into the tubular member.

162. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:

15 applying a tensile force to the expansion cone.

163. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:

displacing the expansion cone into the tubular member.

20 164. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
includes:

displacing the expansion cone out of the tubular member.

25 165. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein axially displacing the expansion cone  
radially expands the tubular member by about 10% to 20%.

166. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein applying direct radial pressure to the  
tubular member radially expands the tubular member by up to about 5%.

30 167. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein applying direct radial pressure to the  
tubular member includes applying a radial force at discrete locations.

168. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein the preexisting structure includes a  
wellbore casing.

169. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein the preexisting structure includes a pipeline.

170. The apparatus of claim 159, wherein the preexisting structure includes a structural support.

171. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
means for anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure;  
means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member; and  
means for lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member.

172. The system of claim 171, wherein the means for lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes:  
means for injecting a lubricating fluid into the trailing edge of the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member.

173. The system of claim 172, wherein the lubricating fluid has a viscosity ranging from about 1 to 10,000 centipoise.

174. The system of claim 172, wherein the injecting includes:  
injecting lubricating fluid into a tapered end of the expansion cone.

175. The system of claim 172, wherein the means for injecting includes:  
means for injecting lubricating fluid into the area around the axial midpoint of a first tapered end of the expansion cone.

176. The system of claim 172, wherein the means for injecting includes:  
means for injecting lubricating fluid into a second end of the expansion cone.

177. The system of claim 172, wherein the means for injecting includes:

means for injecting lubricating fluid into a tapered first end and a second end of the expansion cone.

178. The system of claim 172, wherein the means for injecting includes:  
5 means for injecting lubricating fluid into an interior of the expansion cone.
179. The system of claim 172, wherein the means for injecting includes:  
means for injecting lubricating fluid through an outer surface of the expansion cone.
- 10 180. The system of claim 172, wherein the means for injecting includes:  
means for injecting the lubricating fluid into a plurality of discrete locations along the trailing edge portion.
- 15 181. The system of claim 172, wherein the lubricating fluid comprises:  
drilling mud.
182. The system of claim 172, wherein the lubricating fluid further includes:  
TorqTrim III;  
20 EP Mudlib; and  
DrillIN-Slid.
183. The system of claim 172, wherein the lubricating fluid comprises:  
TorqTrim III;  
25 EP Mudlib; and  
DrillIN-Slid.
184. The system of claim 711, wherein the means for lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes:  
30 means for coating the interior surface of the tubular member with a lubricant.
185. The system of claim 171, wherein the means for lubricating the interface between the expansion cone and the tubular member includes:  
means for coating the interior surface of the tubular member with a first part  
35 of a lubricant; and

means for applying a second part of the lubricant to the interior surface of the tubular member.

186. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant comprises a metallic soap.

5

187. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant is selected from the group consisting of C-Lube-10, C-PHOS-58-M, and C-PHOS-58-R.

188. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant provides a sliding friction coefficient of less than about 0.20.

189. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant is chemically bonded to the interior surfaces of the tubular members.

190. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant is mechanically bonded to the interior surfaces of the tubular members.

191. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant is adhesively bonded to the interior surface of the tubular members.

20

192. The system of claim 184, wherein the lubricant includes epoxy, molybdenum disulfide, graphite, aluminum, copper, alumosilicate and polyethylenepolyamine.

193. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by

30 pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member;

wherein the tubular member includes:

an annular member, including:

a wall thickness that varies less than about 8 %;

a hoop yield strength that varies less than about 10 %;

35 imperfections of less than about 8 % of the wall thickness;

no failure for radial expansions of up to about 30%; and  
no necking of the walls of the annular member for radial expansions of up to about 25%.

5 194. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
injecting a lubricating fluid into the preexisting structure;  
positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
10 anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

195. The system of claim 194, wherein the lubricating fluid comprises:  
15 BARO-LUB GOLD-SEAL™ brand drilling mud lubricant.

196. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
means for positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
means for anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member;  
25 wherein the expandable tubular member includes:  
a first tubular member;  
a second tubular member; and  
a threaded connection for coupling the first tubular member to the second tubular member, the threaded connection including:  
30 one or more sealing members for sealing the interface between the first and second tubular members.

197. The system of claim 196, wherein the threaded connection comprises a pin and box threaded connection.

198. The system of claim 196, wherein the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

5 199. The system of claim 196, wherein one of the sealing members is positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection; and wherein another one of the sealing members is not positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

10 200. The system of claim 196, wherein a plurality of the sealing members are positioned adjacent to an end portion of the threaded connection.

201. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

15 means for positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable

20 tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member;

wherein the expandable tubular member includes a plurality of tubular members having threaded portions that are coupled to one another by the process of:

25 coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with a sealant;

coupling the threaded portions of the tubular members; and

curing the sealant.

202. The system of claim 201, wherein the sealant is selected from the group

30 consisting of epoxies, thermosetting sealing compounds, curable sealing compounds, and sealing compounds having polymerizable materials.

203. The system of claim 201, further including:

means for initially curing the sealant prior to radially expanding the tubular

35 members; and

means for finally curing the sealant after radially expanding the tubular members.

204. The system of claim 201, wherein the sealant can be stretched up to about 5 30 to 40 percent after curing without failure.

205. The system of claim 201, wherein the sealant is resistant to conventional wellbore fluidic materials.

10 206. The system of claim 201, wherein the material properties of the sealant are substantially stable for temperatures ranging from about 0 to 450 °F.

207. The system of claim 201, further including:  
means for applying a primer to the threaded portions of the tubular members  
15 prior to coating the threaded portions of the tubular members with the sealant.

208. The system of claim 207, wherein the primer includes a curing catalyst.

209. The system of claim 207, wherein the primer is applied to the threaded 20 portion of one of the tubular members and the sealant is applied to the threaded portion of the other one of the tubular members.

210. The system of claim 207, wherein the primer includes a curing catalyst.

25 211. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:  
positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;  
anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and  
30 axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member,  
wherein the tubular member includes:  
a pair of rings for engaging the preexisting structure; and  
a sealing element positioned between the rings for sealing the interface  
35 between the tubular member and the preexisting structure.

212. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

5 positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member; wherein the tubular member includes one or more slots.

10 213. The system of claim 212, wherein the slots are provided at a preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

15 214. The system of claim 212, wherein the slots are provided at a non-preexpanded portion of the tubular member.

20 215. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member; wherein the tubular member includes: a first preexpanded portion; an intermediate portion coupled to the first preexpanded portion including a sealing element; and a second preexpanded portion coupled to the intermediate portion.

30 216. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member by applying an axial force to the expansion cone;

wherein the axial force includes:

5 a substantially constant axial force; and  
an increased axial force.

217. The system of claim 216, wherein the increased axial force is provided on a periodic basis.

10

218. The system of claim 216, wherein the increased axial force is provided on a random basis.

15

219. The system of claim 216, wherein the ratio of the increased axial force to the substantially constant axial force ranges from about 5 to 40 %.

220. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

20 means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the expandable tubular member by pushing and pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member.

25

221. The system of claim 220, wherein the means for pushing the expansion cone includes:

means for injecting a pressurized fluidic material into contact with the expansion cone.

30

222. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

35 means for anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure;

means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the expandable tubular member; and

means for injecting a curable fluidic sealing material between the tubular member and the preexisting structure prior to axially displacing the expansion cone.

223. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by increasing the size of the expansion cone; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

224. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure by heating a portion of the tubular member; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member by pulling the expansion cone through the tubular member.

225. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchoring device within the preexisting structure;

means for positioning the anchoring device above the expansion cone;

means for anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure using the anchoring device; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone.

226. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for explosively anchoring the tubular member to the preexisting structure; and

5 means for axially displacing the expansion cone relative to the tubular member.

227. A system for coupling an expandable tubular to a preexisting structure, comprising:

10 means for fixing the position of an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for driving the expandable tubular member onto the expansion cone in a first direction; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone in a second direction relative

15 to the expandable tubular member;

wherein the first and second directions are different.

228. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

20 means for placing the expandable tubular, an expansion cone, and a resilient anchor within the preexisting structure;

means for releasing the resilient anchor; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone within the expandable

60 tubular member.

229. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for placing the expandable tubular member, an expansion cone, and an anchor into the preexisting structure;

30 means for anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure that includes means for pivoting one or more engagement elements; and

means for axially displacing the expansion cone.

230. The system of claim 229, wherein the means for pivoting the engagement

35 elements includes:

means for actuating the engagement elements.

231. The system of claim 229, wherein the means for pivoting the engagement elements includes:

5 means for placing a quantity of a fluidic material onto the engagement elements.

232. The system of claim 229, wherein the means for pivoting the engagement elements includes:

10 means for displacing the expandable tubular member.

233. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone 15 into the preexisting structure;

means for placing a quantity of a fluidic material onto the expandable tubular member to anchor the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure; and means for axially displacing the expansion cone.

20 234. The system of claim 233, wherein the fluidic material comprises a barite plug.

235. The system of claim 233, wherein the fluidic material comprises a flex plug.

25 236. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone into the preexisting structure;

means for anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure by injecting a quantity of a hardenable fluidic material into the preexisting 30 structure;

means for at least partially curing the hardenable fluidic sealing material; and means for axially displacing the expansion cone.

35 237. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure; and

means for applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member in a downward direction.

5

238. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

10 means for injecting a quantity of a first fluidic material having a first density into the region of the preexisting structure outside of the expandable tubular member; and

means for injecting a quantity of a second fluidic material having a second density into a portion of the expandable tubular member below the expansion cone;

15 wherein the second density is greater than the first density.

239. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone 20 into the preexisting structure;

means for anchoring the expandable tubular member to the preexisting structure;

means for applying an axial force to the expansion cone; and

means for pressurizing an interior portion of the expandable tubular member 25 below the expansion cone.

240. A system for coupling an expandable tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for placing the expandable tubular member and an expansion cone 30 into the preexisting structure; and

means for applying an axial force to the expandable tubular member.

241. A system for coupling a tubular member to a preexisting structure, comprising:

means for positioning the tubular member and an expansion cone within the preexisting structure;

means for axially displacing the expansion cone;

means for removing the expansion cone; and

5 means for applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member.

242. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

means for pressurizing at least a portion of the interior of the tubular  
10 member.

243. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

means for injecting a fluidic material into the tubular member.

15 244. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

means for applying a tensile force to the expansion cone.

20 245. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for axially displacing the expansion cone includes:

means for displacing the expansion cone into the tubular member.

246. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for axially displacing the  
25 expansion cone includes:

means for displacing the expansion cone out of the tubular member.

247. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for axially displacing the expansion cone radially expands the tubular member by about 10% to 20%.

30 248. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for applying direct radial pressure to the first tubular member radially expands the tubular member by up to about 5%.

249. The system of claim 241, wherein the means for applying direct radial pressure to the tubular member includes means for applying a radial force at discrete locations.

5 250. The system of claim 241, wherein the preexisting structure includes a wellbore casing.

251. The system of claim 241, wherein the preexisting structure includes a pipeline.

10 252. The system of claim 241, wherein the preexisting structure includes a structural support.



INVESTOR IN PEOPLE

Application No: GB0404832.8

Examiner: Dave Pepper

Claims searched: 1 to 15

Date of search: 20 April 2004

## Patents Act 1977: Search Report under Section 17

### Documents considered to be relevant:

Category	Relevant to claims	Identity of document and passage or figure of particular reference
A	-	GB 2356651 A Shell Internationale Research
A	-	WO 01/04535 A Enventure Global Technology

### Categories:

X Document indicating lack of novelty or inventive step	A Document indicating technological background and/or state of the art.
Y Document indicating lack of inventive step if combined with one or more other documents of same category.	P Document published on or after the declared priority date but before the filing date of this invention.
& Member of the same patent family	E Patent document published on or after, but with priority date earlier than, the filing date of this application.

### Field of Search:

Search of GB, EP, WO & US patent documents classified in the following areas of the UKC<sup>W</sup> :

E1F

Worldwide search of patent documents classified in the following areas of the IPC<sup>W</sup>

E21B

The following online and other databases have been used in the preparation of this search report

Online: WPI, EPODOC

165